Programmer's Guide to Apple Scanners

Second edition

Developer Technical Publications © Apple Computer, Inc. 1995 Apple Computer, Inc.
 © 1995, Apple Computer, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, mechanical, electronic, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior written permission of Apple Computer, Inc. Printed in the United States of America.

The Apple logo is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. Use of the "keyboard" Apple logo (Option-Shift-K) for commercial purposes without the prior written consent of Apple may constitute trademark infringement and unfair competition in violation of federal and state laws.

No licenses, express or implied, are granted with respect to any of the technology described in this book. Apple retains all intellectual property rights associated with the technology described in this book. This book is intended to assist application developers to develop applications only for Apple Macintosh computers.

Apple Computer, Inc. 20525 Mariani Avenue Cupertino, CA 95014 408-996-1010

Apple, the Apple logo, APDA, AppleTalk, LaserWriter, and Macintosh are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

AppleFax, OneScanner, Color OneScanner, and QuickDraw are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. Adobe Illustrator and PostScript are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated, which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

FrameMaker is a registered trademark of Frame Technology Corporation. Helvetica and Palatino are registered trademarks of Linotype Company. ITC Zapf Dingbats is a registered trademark of International Typeface Corporation.

MacDraw and MacPaint are registered trademarks of Claris Corporation. Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation.

Varityper is a registered trademark of Varityper, Inc.

Simultaneously published in the United States and Canada.

LIMITED WARRANTY ON MEDIA AND REPLACEMENT

If you discover physical defects in the manual or in the media on which a software product is distributed, APDA will replace the media or manual at no charge to you provided you return the item to be replaced with proof of purchase to APDA.

ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES ON THIS MANUAL, INCLUDING IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO NINETY (90) DAYS FROM THE DATE OF THE ORIGINAL RETAIL PURCHASE OF THIS PRODUCT.

Even though Apple has reviewed this manual, APPLE MAKES NO WARRANTY OR REPRESENTATION, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT TO THIS MANUAL, ITS QUALITY, ACCURACY, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. AS A RESULT, THIS MANUAL IS SOLD "AS IS," AND YOU, THE PURCHASER, ARE ASSUMING THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO ITS QUALITY AND ACCURACY.

IN NO EVENT WILL APPLE BE LIABLE FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT OR INACCURACY IN THIS MANUAL, even if advised of the possibility of such damages.

THE WARRANTY AND REMEDIES SET FORTH ABOVE ARE EXCLUSIVE AND IN LIEU OF ALL OTHERS, ORAL OR WRITTEN, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. No Apple dealer, agent, or employee is authorized to make any modification, extension, or addition to this warranty.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of implied warranties or liability for incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Contents

Figures and Tables ix

| Preface | About This Book xiii |
|-----------|---|
| | What's in This Book xiii How to Use This Book xiv Conventions Used in This Book xiv Code Conventions xv Terminology xvi Supplemental Reference Documents xvi For More Information xvi |
| Chapter 1 | A Scanning Primer 1 |
| | Anatomy of a Scan 2 Pixels and Resolution 3 About Scanning Parameters 4 Composition 4 Contrast 5 Brightness 7 Resolution 7 Scan Area 8 Gamma Correction 8 Color Correction 8 Automatic Background Adjustment 10 What a Scanning Application Needs to Do 10 Initializing Scanning Parameters 11 Defining an Image Buffer 11 Initializing the Scan 11 Retrieving the Image 11 Storing the Image in an Output File 11 Apple Scanner Models 12 |
| Chapter 2 | The Apple Scanner Driver 13 |
| | About the Scanner Driver14Using the Scanner Driver16Gaining Access to the Scanner16Determining Scanner Capabilities19Setting Scan Parameters23 |

Starting the Scan and Reading Image Data24Using Advanced Scanner Features27Using the Scanner Driver From Assembly Language29

Chapter 3 Scanner Driver Functions 31

Standard Functions 32 ScAbortScan 33 ScClose 34 ScDoScan 35 40 ScGetHalfTones ScGetRes 41 ScGetStdFeatures 42 ScOpen 43 ScSetScanArea 44 Advanced Functions 45 ScGetAdvFeatures 46 ScGetButton 47 48 ScInvertPixels ScLoadGamma 49 50 ScLoadMatrix 51 ScResetButton 52 ScSensorSelect ScSetGraymap 53 ScSetGroup3 54 ScSetHTPattern 55 ScSetLamp 56 ScSetLED 57 ScSetNoCal 58 ScSetNoHome 59 ScSetScannerAtoD 60 ScSetSpeed 61 ScSetThreshold 62 **ScSetWaitButton** 63 ScVendorUnique 64

Chapter 4

Scanner Driver Data Structures 67

Standard Data Structures68ScAreaRec69ScCompRec75ScHalfToneArray78ScResArray79ScScanAreaRec80

| | ScStdFeaturesRec 81 Advanced Data Structures 83 ScAdvFeaturesRec 84 ScPatRec 87 ScGammaTableRec 89 ScMatrix 90 |
|-----------|--|
| Chapter 5 | Scanner Driver Summary 91 |
| | Standard Constants92Advanced Constants92Standard Data Types93Advanced Data Types95Standard Functions96Advanced Functions96Function Result Codes97Device Manager Equivalents100 |
| Chapter 6 | SCSI Interface for Apple Scanners 103 |
| | SCSI Hardware Interface 104 Connector assignments 104 Bus Phases 106 |

Connector assignments 104 Bus Phases 106 SCSI Implementation by Apple Scanners 107 SCSI Status Codes 108 SCSI Messages 108 Apple Scanner Message 108 OneScanner and Color OneScanner Messages 109

Chapter 7 SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners 111

TEST UNIT READY (\$00) 113 **REQUEST SENSE (\$03)** 114 REQUEST SENSE Return Structure Description for the Apple Scanner 115 REQUEST SENSE Return Structure Description for the OneScanner 117 **REQUEST SENSE Return Structure Description for the** Color OneScanner 119 INQUIRY (\$12) 122 INQUIRY Return Structure Description for the Apple Scanner 123 INQUIRY Return Structure Description for the OneScanner 126 INQUIRY Return Structure Description for the Color OneScanner 129

MODE SELECT (\$15) 133 **MODE SELECT Parameter List Description** 133 Apple-Specific Parameter Page Description for the Apple Scanner 134 Apple-Specific Parameter Page Description for the OneScanner 135 Apple-Specific Parameter Page Description for the Color OneScanner 137 **Disconnect-Reconnect Parameter Page Description** 138 RESERVE (\$16) 140 RELEASE (\$17) 142 MODE SENSE (\$1A) 143 Apple-Specific Data Page Description for the Apple Scanner 144 Apple-Specific Data Page Description for the OneScanner 145 Apple-Specific Data Page Description for the Color OneScanner 147 SCAN (\$1B) 149 SCAN Command Structure for the Apple Scanner 149 SCAN Command Structure for the OneScanner 150 SCAN Command Structure for the Color OneScanner 151 Window Parameter List 152 SEND DIAGNOSTIC (\$1D) 153 **DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$24)** 154 DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Command Structure for the Apple Scanner 154 DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Command Structure for the OneScanner and the Color OneScanner 155 **DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Parameter List for the** Apple Scanner 156 **DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Parameter List for the** OneScanner 159 **DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Parameter List for the** Color OneScanner 163 Using Window Descriptors With the Apple Scanner 166 GET WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$25) 168 READ (\$28) 170 **READ** Command Structure for the Apple Scanner 170 **READ** Command Structure for the OneScanner 171 **READ** Command Structure for the Color OneScanner 173 SEND (\$2A) 176 SEND Command Structure for the Apple Scanner 176 SEND Command Structure for the OneScanner 177 SEND Command Structure for the Color OneScanner 178 Halftone Parameter Page Description for the Apple Scanner and the OneScanner 179 Gamma Data Write Format for the Color OneScanner 181 Color Correction Matrix for the Color OneScanner 182 PSRAM Data Write Format for the Color OneScanner 183 **OBJECT POSITION (\$31)** 184

| GET DATA STATUS (\$34) 186 GET DATA STATUS Return Structure Description for the Apple Scanner 187 GET DATA STATUS Return Structure Description for the OneScanner and the Color OneScanner 189 |
|--|
| Specifications 193 |
| Apple Scanner Specifications193Apple OneScanner Specifications194Apple Color OneScanner Specifications196 |
| Optimizing the Color OneScanner 199 |
| Optimizing the Scanner Matrix 199 Gamma Correction 200 |
| Glossary 203 |
| |
| Index 207 |
| |

Figures and Tables

| Chapter 1 | A Scanning Pr | imer 1 | |
|-----------|--|---|--|
| | Figure 1-1 Figure 1-2 Figure 1-3 | A scanner block diagram 3 The effect of the contrast parameter 6 The effect of the brightness parameter in Line Art and Bi-level Color modes 7 | |
| | Figure 1-4 | The three options for the graymap parameter 9 | |
| Chapter 2 | The Apple Scanner Driver 13 | | |
| | Table 2-1 Table 2-2 | Apple scanner driver standard functions15Apple scanner driver advanced functions15 | |
| Chapter 3 | Scanner Drive | r Functions 31 | |
| | Figure 3-1 Figure 3-2 | Scanning into noncontiguous memory 36 How composition mode affects rowBytes and byteWidth 38 | |
| Chapter 4 | Scanner Drive | r Data Structures 67 | |
| | Figure 4-1 Figure 4-2 Figure 4-3 Figure 4-4 Figure 4-5 Figure 4-6 | A scan rectangle70Scan areas at different resolutions71Orientation of returned data bits74Primary and secondary scan areas85Halftone processing87The electronic halftone matrix for a 4-by-4 spiral pattern88 | |
| | Table 4-1 | Samples of halftone array elements 78 | |
| Chapter 5 | Scanner Drive | r Summary 91 | |
| | Table 5-1 Table 5-2 Table 5-3 | Result codes98Device Manager equivalents for standard driver functions100Device Manager equivalents for advanced driver functions101 | |
| Chapter 6 | SCSI Interface | e for Apple Scanners 103 | |
| | Table 6-1 | SCSI connector pin assignments 104 | |

Chapter 7

| Figure 7-1 | The TEST UNIT READY command structure 113 |
|-------------|---|
| Figure 7-2 | The REQUEST SENSE command structure 114 |
| Figure 7-3 | The REQUEST SENSE return structure for the Apple Scanner 115 |
| Figure 7-4 | The REQUEST SENSE return structure for the OneScanner 117 |
| Figure 7-5 | The REQUEST SENSE return structure for the Color OneScanner 119 |
| Figure 7-6 | The INQUIRY command structure 122 |
| Figure 7-7 | The INQUIRY return structure for the Apple Scanner 123 |
| Figure 7-8 | The INQUIRY return structure for the OneScanner 127 |
| Figure 7-9 | The INQUIRY return structure for the Color OneScanner 130 |
| Figure 7-10 | The MODE SELECT command structure 133 |
| Figure 7-11 | The MODE SELECT Apple-specific parameter page for the Apple Scanner 134 |
| Figure 7-12 | The MODE SELECT Apple-specific parameter page for the OneScanner 135 |
| Figure 7-13 | The MODE SELECT Apple-specific parameter page for the Color OneScanner 137 |
| Figure 7-14 | The MODE SELECT disconnect-reconnect parameter page 139 |
| Figure 7-15 | The RESERVE command structure 140 |
| Figure 7-16 | The RELEASE command structure 142 |
| Figure 7-17 | The MODE SENSE command structure 143 |
| Figure 7-18 | The MODE SENSE Apple-specific data page for the Apple Scanner 144 |
| Figure 7-19 | The MODE SENSE Apple-specific data page for the OneScanner 145 |
| Figure 7-20 | The MODE SENSE Apple-specific data page for the Color OneScanner 147 |
| Figure 7-21 | The SCAN command structure for the Apple Scanner 149 |
| Figure 7-22 | The SCAN command structure for the OneScanner 150 |
| Figure 7-23 | The SCAN command structure for the Color OneScanner 151 |
| Figure 7-24 | The SCAN command Window identifier byte 152 |
| Figure 7-25 | The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command structure 153 |
| Figure 7-26 | The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure for the Apple Scanner 154 |
| Figure 7-27 | The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure for the OneScanner and the Color OneScanner 155 |
| Figure 7-28 | The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list for the Apple Scanner 157 |
| Figure 7-29 | The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list for the OneScanner 160 |
| Figure 7-30 | The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list for the Color OneScanner 164 |
| Figure 7-31 | The GET WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure 168 |
| Figure 7-32 | The GET WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list 169 |
| Figure 7-33 | The READ command structure for the Apple Scanner 170 |
| Figure 7-34 | The READ command structure for the OneScanner 171 |
| Figure 7-35 | The READ command structure for the Color OneScanner 173 |
| Figure 7-36 | Extra bit or byte returned for different resolutions and composition modes 175 |
| | composition modes 175 |

| | Figure 7-37 | The SEND command structure for the Apple Scanner 176 |
|------------|----------------|---|
| | Figure 7-38 | The SEND command structure for the OneScanner 177 |
| | Figure 7-39 | The SEND command structure for the Color OneScanner 178 |
| | Figure 7-40 | The SEND command halftone parameter page 179 |
| | Figure 7-41 | The halftone matrix pattern for a 4-by-4 matrix 180 |
| | Figure 7-42 | Gamma data write format 181 |
| | Figure 7-43 | Color correction matrix 182 |
| | Figure 7-44 | PSRAM data write format 183 |
| | Figure 7-45 | The OBJECT POSITION command structure 184 |
| | Figure 7-46 | The GET DATA STATUS command structure 186 |
| | Figure 7-47 | The GET DATA STATUS return structure for the Apple Scanner 187 |
| | Figure 7-48 | The GET DATA STATUS return structure 189 |
| | Table 7-1 | SCSI commands and operation codes 112 |
| | Table 7-2 | Transfer data types and transfer identification 174 |
| Appendix A | Specifications | 193 |
| | Table A-1 | The Apple Scanner specifications 193 |
| | Table A-2 | The Apple OneScanner specifications 194 |
| | Table A-3 | The Apple Color OneScanner specifications 196 |
| | | |
| Appendix B | Optimizing the | Color OneScanner 199 |
| | Table B-1 | Color overlap matrix 200 |
| | Table B-2 | Compensating for filter effects 200 |
| | Table B-3 | Gamma values for Rasterops and Apple monitors 201 |
| | | |

About This Book

The *Programmer's Guide to Apple Scanners* is for application developers who want to create an application capable of importing graphics data from the Apple Scanner, Apple OneScanner, or Apple Color OneScanner.

IMPORTANT

The Apple Scanner is always referred to in this book as the Apple Scanner. The Apple OneScanner is referred to as the Apple OneScanner, or more frequently as the OneScanner. The Apple Color One Scanner is referred to as the Apple Color OneScanner, or the Color OneScanner. The term "Apple scanners" refers generically to any one of the scanners covered by this publication. ▲

This book describes the program interface presented by the Apple scanner driver and the SCSI commands supported by Apple scanners. To use this book successfully, you must have some knowledge of a high-level programming language such as Pascal or C and experience with program development on the Apple Macintosh computer.

This book is not a user's guide or an owner's guide; for information on installing and operating your Apple Scanner, read the *Apple Scanner User's Guide*. For similar information on the Apple Color OneScanner and the Apple OneScanner, read the *Apple Color OneScanner and Apple OneScanner User's Guide*.

This preface describes the contents of each chapter and each appendix, and the typographical conventions used throughout the book. It also lists additional reference materials that will aid you in developing scanner application programs.

What's in This Book

This book consists of seven chapters, two appendixes, a glossary, and an index. The following list briefly describes the contents of each chapter and the appendixes. You can also use the table of contents and the index to help you locate specific topics.

- Chapter 1, "A Scanning Primer," provides a brief introduction to basic scanning concepts and terms. It summarizes the main features of the Apple Scanner, OneScanner, and Color OneScanner.
- Chapter 2, "The Apple Scanner Driver," provides background information about the Apple scanner driver, including a section on how to use it.

- Chapter 3, "Scanner Driver Functions," describes the driver's standard and advanced functions.
- Chapter 4, "Scanner Driver Data Structures," describes the driver's standard and advanced data structures.
- Chapter 5, "Scanner Driver Summary," summarizes the constant values, data types, and functions for the standard and advanced features available in the scanner driver.
- Chapter 6, "SCSI Interface for Apple Scanners," describes the SCSI interface presented by the SCSI hardware on the Apple scanners, including the supported bus phases.
- Chapter 7, "SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners," describes the SCSI commands recognized by the Apple scanners.
- Appendix A, "Specifications," provides tables containing specifications for the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner.
- Appendix B, "Optimizing the Color OneScanner," provides information for improving the output images of the Color OneScanner.

How to Use This Book

Depending upon your requirements, you may not need all the information in this book. Follow these guidelines to make the most of this book:

- If you are not planning to create application programs and are reading this book to learn more about the way that scanners (particularly the Apple Scanner, OneScanner, and Color OneScanner) work, read Chapter 1.
- If you plan to write application programs for Apple scanners on the Macintosh computer, read Chapters 2 through 5 to acquaint yourself with the driver interface.
- If you plan to write application programs for Apple scanners on other computers, read Chapters 6 and 7 to learn about the SCSI commands supported by Apple scanners.

Conventions Used in This Book

The following standard warnings, cautions, and other visual cues are used throughout this book.

Note

A note like this contains supplementary information. •

IMPORTANT

This type of note contains information that is essential for an understanding of the main text. \blacktriangle

▲ WARNING

A warning like this directs your attention to something that could damage software or hardware, or that could result in loss of data.

Terms in *boldface* type are defined in the glossary.

A special font, Courier, is used for characters that you type, or for lines of program code:

It looks like this.

A dollar sign precedes hexadecimal numbers, except in tables that clearly label hexadecimal numbers. For example, the hexadecimal equivalent of decimal 16 is written as \$10.

The names of SCSI commands are in uppercase letters. For example, the SCAN command initiates a scan operation.

Although you can create an application program by using any one of several available languages, application code segments and driver code segments in this book are written in Pascal. Unless otherwise specified, all code references are to Pascal.

Code Conventions

Function declarations in this book follow a standard format. A typical function looks like this:

```
FUNCTION Filter (message: Integer; theBitmap: Bitmap;
bounds: Rect; VAR flag: Boolean; selfHandle:
Handle) : LongInt;
```

The names of functions, procedures, parameters, structures, and data types are in the Courier font. Words consisting of all uppercase letters are defined by the Pascal language (for example, FUNCTION). Words that contain both uppercase and lowercase letters with an initial capital letter identify data types that are defined by Apple Computer, Inc., or by your application. Words that contain both uppercase and lowercase letters but start with a lowercase letter identify variables, fields, or constants that are defined by Apple Computer, Inc., or by your application.

Terminology

Many terms used in this book are specific to computer graphics, and some are specific to the Apple Macintosh environment. The glossary contains the definitions of many terms found in this book. For your convenience, here are definitions of some important basic terms:

- *host computer:* A computer with a SCSI port that is connected to an Apple scanner.
- scanner: Generally, any graphic input device that converts printed matter into digital data. In this book, unless otherwise specified, this term refers to the Apple scanners.
- *application program:* A program on the host computer that sends commands and parameter data to, and receives image data from, the scanner.
- scanner driver: Software on the host computer that provides applications with a simplified interface to the Apple scanners.

The Apple Scanner is referred to in this text as the Apple Scanner, the Apple OneScanner as the OneScanner, and the Apple Color OneScanner as the Color OneScanner.

Supplemental Reference Documents

These Apple publications can help you understand Macintosh computer graphics, including QuickDraw and Color QuickDraw pictures:

- Inside Macintosh, Volumes I and IV, contain detailed information about QuickDraw.
- Inside Macintosh, Volumes V and VI, contain detailed information about Color QuickDraw.

These publications, as well as many reference documents, are available from APDA.

For More Information

APDA (Apple Programmers and Developers Association) is Apple's worldwide source for over 300 development tools, technical resources, training products, and information for anyone interested in developing applications on Apple platforms. Customers receive the quarterly *APDA Tools Catalog*, featuring all current versions of Apple, and most popular third-party development tools. Ordering is easy, there are no membership fees, and

PREFACE

application forms are not required for most APDA products. APDA offers convenient payment and shipping options, including site licensing.

To order a product or to request a complimentary copy of the *APDA Tools Catalog*, contact:

APDA Apple Computer, Inc. P.O. Box 319 Buffalo, NY 14207-0319

800-282-2732 (United States) 800-637-0029 (Canada) 716-871-6555 (International) 716-871-6511 (Fax) AppleLink address: APDA America Online: APDA CompuServe: 76666m2405 Internet: APDA@applelink.apple.com

If you provide commercial products and services, call 408-974-4897 for information on the developer support programs available from Apple Computer, Inc.

The process of digitizing an image for use with a computer is called *scanning*. The device that performs this digitization is called a *scanner*. Scanners play an important role in any desktop publishing strategy.

The world of scanning is available to anyone with a scanner, a document, and a need to input graphics data into a Macintosh computer. The Apple Scanner, OneScanner, and Color OneScanner, with their simple command interfaces, make scanning available to all developers who wish to provide the capability in their application programs.

This chapter introduces you to basic image-scanning concepts and scanner hardware. It provides a high-level description of the way that the Apple scanners and scanning application programs work together.

Anatomy of a Scan

The scanning process consists of several steps: sensing the *image* on paper, placing the representative *pixels* in computer memory, and displaying the image on the screen. When a document is placed on the *scanner glass*, the scanner digitizes the image, and the scanner application places the image in an image file that can be imported by a graphics application such as MacPaint[®]. You can then manipulate the image as desired.

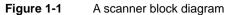
A scanner can also translate characters on paper into a text file. *Optical character recognition* (OCR) software recognizes text characters in scanned input and converts them to machine-readable form. Users can then work with that text just as they would any other text file.

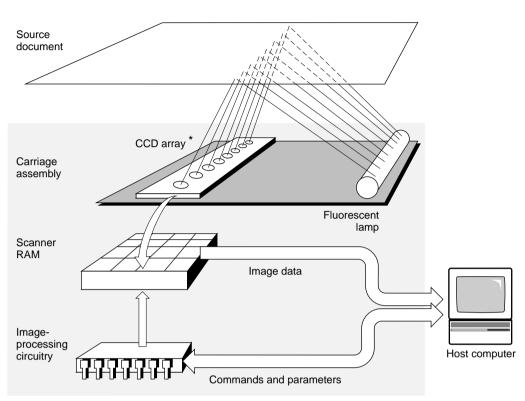
All Apple scanners are capable of digitizing any document, whether it is a graphics image or a page of text. Figure 1-1 is a simplified diagram showing the major components of the scanners that work together to accomplish this task.

Appendix B, "Optimizing the Color OneScanner," provides supplementary information on this subject.

A scanner is a self-contained unit that uses fluorescent light for the purpose of digitally encoding a source document. The scanner hardware senses the light reflected from the source document and stores it as digital data. The scanner then sends the scanned information, in digital format, to the host computer. Once the scanned document resides on the host computer, you can edit, print, display, or send the document through the AppleFax modem or through the AppleTalk network.

The application program running on the host computer sends commands and *parameters* to the scanner, setting scanning values within the scanner or instructing the scanner to perform some specific function. The scanner then performs a scan and sends the image data to the host computer, which stores it in a memory *buffer* until the data is viewed, printed, or saved to a disk file.





* CCD = charge-coupled device (see Glossary)

Pixels and Resolution

To understand the scanning process, think of a source document as an array of dots or pixels (picture elements). This is exactly how the document appears to the scanner. The scanning *resolution*, controlled by the application program, determines the size of the dots. Resolutions as high as 300 dpi (dots per inch) are available. (For more information, see "Resolution," later in this chapter.) When scanning at 300dpi, a scanner interprets an 8.5-by-11-inch document as an array of more than 8,000,000 dots. This array is called a *bitmap*, and it is a digitized image of the *original* document. Depending upon other *parameters* that you specify, each dot in the bitmap is either black, white, a shade of gray, or a color.

Note

The terms "dots" and "pixels" are used interchangeably in this publication. ◆

The scanner creates the bitmap by passing a *fluorescent lamp* along the document and sensing the reflected light. The lamp is mounted on a movable *carriage*. The application program can designate any area of the document as the scanning area. It is within this area that the scanner digitizes images and creates a bitmap for use in the host computer.

About Scanning Parameters

Your application must provide the scanner with the parameters for scanning a document. These parameters determine the characteristics of the scan. The fundamental parameters required by a scanner are:

- Composition
- Contrast
- Brightness
- Resolution
- Scan area

Optional parameters are:

- Graymap (gamma correction)
- Color correction (Color OneScanner only)
- Automatic background adjustment

The host computer sends the parameters to the scanner via scanner commands. One or more parameters accompany each command sent to the scanner. The scanner uses each parameter to control some aspect of the scanning environment. This process provides a user with great flexibility. By modifying each of the parameters through the application, you can scan virtually any type of document and create an accurate representation of the original.

Composition

The *composition parameter* determines both the mode in which the scanner scans the image and the type of image data that the scanner returns. Each mode results in a different representation of the scanned image. The user chooses a mode after considering the nature of the original document and the planned use of the resulting image. The Apple scanners support a variety of modes. The Apple Scanner and the OneScanner support Line Art, Halftone, and Grayscale modes. The Color OneScanner supports Line Art, Grayscale, Bi-level Color, and Full Color modes.

When working in *Line Art mode*, the scanner places a black or white dot in the bitmap for each dot sensed on the original document. In this mode, the scanner also interprets shades of gray as either black or white. The value of the dot (black or white) is determined by the setting of the brightness parameter, which is described in "Brightness," later in this chapter.

Halftone mode generates an image by using halftone patterns to simulate shades of gray in the original document. A *halftone pattern* consists of a matrix of brightness values. In Halftone mode, the scanner filters scanned data through that matrix, turning result pixels on or off according to the brightness of the scanned image pixel relative to the

appropriate matrix value. The resulting two-level data emulates grayscale encoding in much the same way that dithering a color image fools the eye into seeing colors that are not there.

The user can use the halftone patterns that are built into the scanner or download one to the scanner. The scanner interprets each gray dot on the document as black or white using the halftone matrix as well as the contrast and brightness parameters, which are described next in "Contrast" and "Brightness."

Grayscale mode generates a gray dot in the bitmap for each dot on the original document. Different scanners have different gray-scale capabilities. The Apple Scanner supports 16 shades, or levels, of gray. The OneScanner supports 256 intensity levels. The content of the resulting image depends on the settings of the contrast and brightness parameters, which are described next in "Contrast" and "Brightness."

Bi-level Color mode produces 8-color bitmaps. Although scanning is in color, each color component, red, green and blue, has only two possible values: on or off.

Full Color mode generates the largest range of colors. For each line, the scanner outputs color pixel data in three planes: red, green, and blue. Each of the three color components has 256 possible values (8 bits of each color), for a total of 16.8 million colors (3 colors x 8 bits = 24-bit color depth per pixel).

Contrast

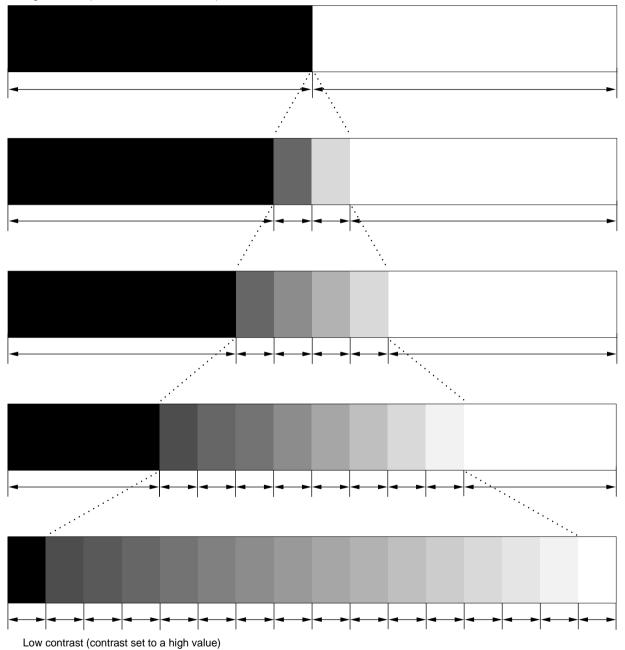
The *contrast parameter* is used only in Grayscale and Full Color modes. It controls the intensity levels that the scanner applies to the scanned image. The value specified for the contrast parameter controls the amount of the visible spectrum that the scanner interprets as levels of gray. Those portions of the visible spectrum that fall outside the gray area are rendered as black or white, depending upon their placement in the spectrum. In Line Art and Bi-level Color modes, the scanners assume that this parameter has a value of 0 (off).

Low contrast values instruct the scanner to render only a small portion of the spectrum as intensity levels and a large portion as black or white, yielding an image with more pronounced (higher) contrast. Higher contrast values render a greater amount of the visible spectrum as shades of gray, so the image looks "flatter," with less of the visible spectrum rendered as black or white. Figure 1-2 on page 6 shows the effects of changing the contrast parameter. The contrast feature in the OneScanner and Apple Scanner were implemented in the opposite way to the contrast feature in the Color OneScanner. For example, increasing the value of contrast results in a lighter, or "flatter" image in the Color OneScanner, but in the OneScanner and the Apple Scanner, the image will be darker. CHAPTER 1

A Scanning Primer

Figure 1-2 The effect of the contrast parameter

High contrast (contrast set to a low value)



Brightness

The *brightness parameter* controls the brightness of the resulting image. The scanners interpret this value differently depending upon the composition mode. In Line Art mode, the brightness parameter determines the threshold level at which a dot goes from black to white. The scanner renders gray values that are greater than the brightness threshold as black pixels; it renders those that are less than the threshold as white pixels. Figure 1-3 shows how the brightness parameter determines which shades of gray result in black dots and which result in white dots.

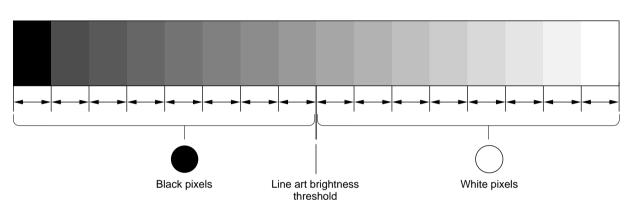


Figure 1-3 The effect of the brightness parameter in Line Art and Bi-level Color modes

In Grayscale, Halftone, Bi-level Color, and Full Color modes, the brightness parameter positions the center point of the visible spectrum. The scanner then divides the two resulting parts into a number of intensity levels. Your application uses the contrast parameter to control the amount of the visible spectrum devoted to intensity levels. Higher brightness values yield a lighter image, because more of the visible spectrum is devoted to lighter shades of gray. Lower values yield a darker image.

In Bi-level Color mode, the brightness control shifts the black/white threshold level. The threshold ranges from 1 (minimum) to 255 (maximum), in steps of 1.

Resolution

The *resolution parameter* determines the number of horizontal and vertical dots that make up the bitmap. The value of the resolution parameter specifies the number of dots per inch in the resulting image. Higher values result in images with greater detail. Storing high-resolution images also requires more host computer memory than storing low-resolution images.

Although several different output resolutions are available, all documents are scanned at a horizontal resolution of 300 dpi. If you want a lower horizontal resolution, your application can alter the resolution setting of the scanner. The image-processing circuitry of the scanner later combines or averages pixels. The scanner generates the vertical

resolution by moving the scanning carriage at one of several speeds along the vertical axis of the document and by discarding lines of pixels to obtain a lower vertical resolution.

Alternatively, your application can leave the scanner at its highest resolution setting and later generate the lower-resolution data itself. Your application can reduce the resolution of the scanned image by averaging the values of adjacent pixels. By following this approach, you can determine the averaging algorithm used to generate the lower-resolution image. However, this technique is slower than relying on the scanner circuitry.

Scan Area

The *scan area parameter* defines the rectangular area on the source document for which the scanner generates a bitmap. With the Apple Scanner, you may define more than one scan area.

Gamma Correction

To the human eye, dark objects seem to lose detail. The Apple Scanner and the Color OneScanner provide correction techniques, called *gamma correction*, to compensate for this aspect of human vision. By applying the appropriate option, you can cause the scanner to accentuate the detail in either light or dark areas of the scanned image. Three correction options are available in the Apple Scanner to help minimize the effect of this optical illusion. Appendix B, "Optimizing the Color OneScanner," provides more information on this subject.

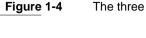
As Figure 1-4 shows, these three options for the *graymap parameter* allow Apple scanners to

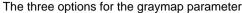
- simulate the visual response of the human eye (represented by line A)
- lighten the image, thereby enhancing the visible detail in the dark areas of the document and losing some detail in the light areas (represented by line B)
- darken the image, thereby enhancing the visible detail in the light areas of the document and losing some detail in the dark areas (represented by line C)

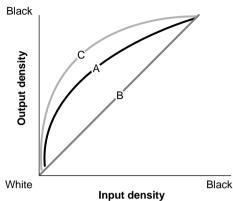
The OneScanner does not support gamma correction.

Color Correction

Color correction changes color data obtained from one source for output to a destination device. It is typically applied so that data looks good when displayed on a monitor or when printed. Different color correction values may be used according to the objective. For example, one objective might be to correct the data so that when it is displayed, it matches an original photograph. Another objective might be to correct the data so that when it is displayed, it matches the appearance of the printed data. The Color OneScanner incorporates a hardware mechanism, called the 3-by-3 matrix multiplier,







that can be loaded with the desired color correction. The color correction circuitry performs a 3-by-3 matrix calculation, as shown below:

 $[R_{OUT}] = [A] [R_{IN}]$

 $[G_{OUT}] = [A] [G_{IN}]$

 $[B_{OUT}] = [A] [B_{IN}]$

where R, G, and B represent the colors red, green, and blue, IN is the input image, and OUT is the output image, and A represents the downloadable 3-by-3 matrix multiplier, with the following values:

| 00 | 01 | 02 |
|----|----|----|
| 10 | 11 | 12 |
| 20 | 21 | 22 |

The 3-by-3 matrix multiplier modifies the RGB values obtained by the scanner before the data is returned to the CPU. It performs a variety of functions:

- It adjusts the scanned image data for a particular output device, such as a printer, so that the image data, when printed, closely matches the original.
- It converts color data to gray-scale. This is done by loading the 3-by-3 matrix with the appropriate values. The de facto standard true luminance values for RGB are:

Luminance = 0.30 * R + 0.59* G + 0.11* B

To set the values of the matrix, the application needs to determine the coefficients, using the following procedure. Since the multiplier is 16 bits, including the sign bit, and the range of the normalized values in the 3-by-3 matrix is 0 to 1, the coefficients in decimal are:

| Red | .3 * 32767 | = | 9830 |
|-------|-------------|---|-------|
| Green | .59 * 32767 | = | 19332 |
| Blue | .11 * 32767 | = | 3604 |

| This gives a matrix of: | | | |
|-------------------------|-------|------|--|
| 9830 | 19332 | 3604 | |
| 9830 | 19332 | 3604 | |
| 9830 | 19332 | 3604 | |

Appendix B, "Optimizing the Color OneScanner," provides more information on this subject.

Automatic Background Adjustment

Your application lets the Apple Scanner automatically adjust the brightness threshold to bring out the most detail in a document. Called *automatic background adjustment*, this option can be used when one brightness setting does not provide the desired scanned result. By adjusting the brightness level automatically over the length of the document, automatic background adjustment can provide the best scanned image of a complex original document. The *threshold parameter* allows you to influence the operation of automatic background adjustment in the Apple Scanner.

The OneScanner and the Color OneScanner do not support automatic background adjustment.

What a Scanning Application Needs to Do

The scanner performs its functions unaided, but an application must first instruct it how and when to perform the scan. This section outlines the steps an application must take to initiate a successful scan of a document.

The scanner responds to commands and parameters sent to it by your application. The order in which the commands and data are delivered to the scanner is important; for example, your application must set the scanning parameters before sending a scan command. Your application must provide this information in the correct order and must be able to handle the image data returned from the scanner. To scan an original document successfully an application should:

- 1. Initialize the scanning parameters.
- 2. Define an image buffer within the host computer's memory.
- 3. Initiate the scan.
- 4. Retrieve the image data from the scanner and store it in the image buffer.
- 5. Save the data to a disk file (an optional step).

You can construct your application to perform any tasks required to fulfill the needs of the user, but it must perform the tasks described in the following sections.

Initializing Scanning Parameters

Initializing the scanning parameters establishes the context for the subsequent scan operation. All scanning parameters are initialized to a default value when you turn on the scanner, but you can customize the scanner for a particular image by specifying a value for each parameter. Your application may provide a mechanism for user control of the appropriate scanner parameters. Your application should retrieve the valid values for the scanner parameters from the scanner driver.

Defining an Image Buffer

The image buffer, located in the host computer's memory, stores the bitmap data that the scanner sends to the host computer. Once you specify the parameter values, your application can calculate the size of the bitmap required to store a scanned image. If the amount of memory available is too small to contain the complete bitmap, your application may write the surplus image data to a disk file. When the image is needed (for editing, display, or printing), the application can read the data from the disk file back into a buffer.

Note

The color format of the Color OneScanner is different from the QuickDraw format. You must therefore rearrange the data before QuickDraw can display it. See the section in Chapter 2, "Starting the Scan and Reading Image Data," for sample code that shows how data is rearranged. ◆

Initializing the Scan

When you prompt your application, it should send a command to the scanner to begin the scanning sequence. The scanner scans the document and stores the data in the scanner's internal memory.

Retrieving the Image

Once the scan begins, your application must poll the scanner to determine whether image data is available for transfer to the host computer. The scanner's memory is large enough to hold only a fraction of the image data. (See Appendix A, "Specifications.") Therefore, once your application starts receiving data, it must transfer image data repeatedly from the scanner's memory to the host computer's image buffer.

Storing the Image in an Output File

One reason to scan documents is to share image data. A standardized graphics file format simplifies data exchange. The Macintosh computer uses two common picture file formats. The Apple standard file contains a PICT data structure, which stores MacDraw pictures or bitmap data. The MacPaint picture file (PNTG) stores bitmap data. Your application may use either of these file formats to store the image data. It may also use any custom file format.

Apple Scanner Models

There are three members of the Apple scanner family, the Apple Scanner, the Apple OneScanner, and the Apple Color OneScanner. They are all flatbed scanners.

The Apple Scanner supports 4-bit gray-scale encoding (up to 16 levels of gray) and a number of resolutions ranging from 75 to 300 dots per inch (dpi). This is the original Apple scanner, and it is still supported by the current Apple scanner driver software.

The OneScanner supports 8-bit gray-scale encoding, providing up to 256 levels of gray. This scanner supports resolutions from 72 to 300 dpi, in increments of 1 dpi. The OneScanner also improves upon the Apple Scanner by providing faster data transfer speeds and a greater range of control options for scanning applications.

In Full Color mode, the Color OneScanner supports three (red, green, and blue) color planes, providing 256 possible values for each color component, with 16.8 million color choices. The Color OneScanner's Bi-level Color mode supports eight colors. The scanner supports resolutions from 72 to 300 dpi, in increments of 1 dpi.

Each scanner can accommodate source documents up to 8.5 inches wide by 14 inches long.

Graphics application programs communicate with a scanner in one of two ways: by sending commands and parameter data directly to the scanner, or by making calls to a scanner *driver*. A driver deals with much of the low-level work of handling commands and data, freeing the application to perform high-level tasks that are meaningful to the user. A driver may also isolate the application from interface differences between various supported scanners. The Apple scanner driver recognizes a predefined set of functions and, in turn, instructs the Apple scanners to perform the individual tasks that result in a scanned image.

This chapter discusses how your application can use the Apple scanner driver to control Apple scanners. If you are writing an application that runs on a Macintosh computer, use the functions for the Apple scanner driver listed in this chapter. If you are writing an application that runs on a computer other than a Macintosh computer, use the *SCSI* commands listed in Chapter 7, "SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners."

About the Scanner Driver

The Apple scanner driver provides a consistent, extensible interface to the Apple scanner family, including the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner. The driver isolates your application from many of the details of configuring a scanner and directing a scan operation, allowing you to focus on features that benefit the user. In addition, the driver interface provides an easy way for your application to determine the features of any attached Apple scanner and to take advantage of new scanner features in the future.

The driver provides a two-level interface, accommodating a wide range of graphics applications. The driver's standard functions support basic scanner features and allow an application to obtain a scanned image easily. These driver functions are most useful to applications that benefit from reading images directly from a scanner but do not need to control or manipulate the scanner itself. For example, draw and paint programs tend to concentrate on image creation and manipulation rather than scanner control. The standard driver functions are intended for such applications.

The advanced functions of the Apple scanner driver support applications that allow users to operate and control scanners. Such applications need to take advantage of all the features present in a particular scanner. The driver's advanced functions allow these programs to utilize the full range of features supported by a given scanner. The advanced functions include a routine that allows an application to determine the capabilities of the attached scanner.

To ensure consistency for future application development, the standard interface will change very little over time; any changes will always be compatible with older Apple scanner products. The advanced interface will grow constantly as Apple adds features to its scanner products. If you write applications that rely on these advanced features, your programs should always query the driver to determine which advanced features the attached scanner supports.

Table 2-1 summarizes the standard functions of the Apple scanner driver. Table 2-2 summarizes the advanced functions of the Apple scanner driver. Chapter 3, "Scanner Driver Functions," discusses each driver function in detail.

| Standard function | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| ScAbortScan | Cancels a scan in progress. |
| ScClose | Terminates the application's access to the scanner, freeing the device for use by another application. |
| ScDoScan | Initiates a scan and returns image data. Subsequent calls to ScDoScan retrieve further image data. |
| ScGetHalfTones | Retrieves information about the halftone patterns supported by the attached scanner. |
| ScGetRes | Retrieves information about the resolutions supported by the attached scanner. |
| ScGetStdFeatures | Retrieves information about the general capabilities of the attached scanner. |
| ScOpen | Grants application access to the attached scanner. |
| ScSetScanArea | Sets the scan area and parameters for a scan operation. |

Table 2-2 Apple scanner driver advanced functions

| Advanced function | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| ScGetAdvFeatures | Retrieves information about the advanced capabilities of the attached scanner. |
| ScGetButton | Reads the state of the scanner button. |
| ScInvertPixels | Inverts pixel values. If InvertFlag is set to TRUE, it causes the value 255 to equal black, and 0 to equal full intensity. |
| ScLoadGamma | Loads tables of values to change the scanner's intensity curves. |
| ScLoadMatrix | Loads the matrix multiplier with the contents of the array data. |
| ScResetButton | Resets the state of the scanner button |
| ScSensorSelect | Allows the application to select which sensor on a color scanner is used for scanning gray. |
| ScSetGrayMap | Sets the graymap compensation curve for the attached scanner. |
| ScSetGroup3 | Controls the image data compression technique used by the scanner. |

continued

| Advanced function | Description | |
|-------------------|---|--|
| ScSetHTPattern | Downloads a custom halftone pattern to the attached scanner. | |
| ScSetLamp | Controls the scanner lamp. | |
| ScSetLed | Controls the scanner light-emitting diode (LED). | |
| ScSetNoCal | Controls whether the scanner calibrates itself for the current lamp intensity before starting a scan operation. | |
| ScSetNoHome | Controls whether the scanner returns the carriage assembly to the home position after a scan operation. | |
| ScSetScannerAtoD | Allows the application to have direct access to the analog-to-digital converter used in the scanning process. | |
| ScSetSpeed | Controls the data transfer speed between the scanner and the host computer. | |
| ScSetThreshold | Sets the automatic background adjustment threshold level for the attached scanner. | |
| ScSetWaitButton | Controls whether the scanner waits for the user to press the scanner button before starting a scan operation. | |
| ScVendorUnique | Provides access to certain unique features supported by the attached scanner. | |

Table 2-2 Apple scanner driver advanced functions (continued)

Using the Scanner Driver

This section discusses many of the basic steps involved in using the Apple scanner driver. Most of these topics deal with the standard driver functions and are therefore relevant to any scanning application. Some of these topics discuss more advanced subjects, including the advanced driver functions and the use of assembly language with the scanner driver. If you are not planning to develop an application that needs these features, you may want to skip the material relating to the advanced functions.

Gaining Access to the Scanner

By its nature a scanner can be used by only one application at a time. The scanner driver provides functions that allow your application to reserve and release the scanner. Before issuing any other driver functions, your application must gain control of the scanner by calling the ScOpen function. If another application has already reserved the scanner, this function returns a result code indicating that the scanner is in use. If the scanner is available, this function returns a reference number to your application. This reference number must be provided to all subsequent scanner driver functions.

When your application has finished using the scanner, it should release the device for use by other applications. Use the ScClose driver function to free the scanner.

The device driver is named .Scanner, and it is a standard Macintosh driver. If the scanner is switched on and the driver is properly installed, the system software automatically loads the scanner driver for you.

You should not open the scanner driver until you are ready to scan, and should close it immediately after every scan. Remember that you must reinitialize the scanning parameters each time you open the driver. Also be aware that another application may currently be using the scanner, in which case, you will receive the ScOpen error number "23."

The Apple scanners must be attached to the SCSI bus, switched on, and initialized before they can receive and process any commands from the host computer. •

The following sample code:

- 1. Opens the scanner driver.
- 2. Calls a routine to set the scanning parameters, which specify the area to be scanned and the characteristics of the area.
- 3. Calls another routine to scan an image.
- 4. Closes the scanner driver.

Note

The application that calls the DoScanCommand procedure must provide a formatted ScStdFeaturesRec record. The fields in this structure indicate the capabilities of the scanner driver, and the structure is set up by the ScGetStdFeatures routine, described later. \blacklozenge

```
PROCEDURE DoScanCommand(
```

| destPort: | GrafPtr; | { Put scanned image into this port } |
|------------------|------------------------------|--|
| scannerInfo: | <pre>ScStdFeaturesRec;</pre> | { Info about scanner features } |
| compositionMode: | Integer; | { Desired composition mode } |
| resolution: | Integer; | { Desired resolution } |
| scanRectangle: | Rect; | { Scan this part of scanner bed } |
| brightnessLevel: | Integer; | { Desired brightness level } |
| contrastLevel: | Integer; | <pre>{ Desired contrast level }</pre> |
| pixelDepth: | Integer; | { Number of bits per pixel } |
| ditherPattern: | Integer); | { Dithering pattern to use } |
| | | |
| CONST | | |
| rCantOpenScann | er = 1; { Resourc | ce ID of "Can't Open Scanner" string } |
| rCantSetupScan | = 2; { Resource | ce ID of "Can't Setup Scan" string } |
| rCantScanImage | = 3; { Resource | ce ID of "Can't Scan Image" string } |
| rCantCloseScan | ner = 4; { Resourc | <pre>ce ID of "Can't Close Scanner" string }</pre> |

```
CHAPTER 2
```

VAR

```
scanRef:
                  Integer;
                                    { Scanner driver reference number }
      scanParms: ScScanAreaRec;
                                    { Parameters for upcoming scan }
                  OSErr;
                                    { Code of any returned error }
      error:
   PROCEDURE HandleError(
         errorNum:
                        OSErr;
        messageNum:
                       LongInt);
      CONST
         rErrAlert
                           = 128;
                                    { Resource ID of error alert }
        rErrStringList
                           = 129;
                                    { Resource ID of error strings }
      VAR
         messageString:
                           Str255;
                                    { String containing error mesage }
         result:
                           Integer; { Result of alert; ignored }
   BEGIN
      { Make sure scanner driver is closed }
      IF scanRef <> 0 THEN
         error := ScClose( scanRef );
      { Tell the user what happened }
      IF errorNum = openErr THEN
         BEGIN
            GetIndString( messageString, rErrStringList, messageNum );
            ParamText( messageString, '', '', '');
            result := Alert( rErrAlert, NIL );
         END;
      EXIT( DoScanCommand );
   END;
BEGIN
   scanRef := 0;
   { Open scanner driver; get returned scanner reference number }
   error := ScOpen( scanRef );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error, rCantOpenScanner );
   { Set the scanning parameters in preparation for the scan }
   error := SetUpScan(
         scanRef,
         scannerInfo,
         compositionMode,
         resolution,
         scanRectangle,
         brightnessLevel,
```

```
CHAPTER 2
```

```
contrastLevel,
         pixelDepth,
         ditherPattern,
         scanParms );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error, rCantSetupScan );
   { Scan the image }
   error := ScanImage(
         scanRef,
         destPort,
         scannerInfo,
         scanParms.scanAreas[1] );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error, rCantScanImage );
   { Image retrieved; now close the scanner driver }
   error := ScClose( scanRef );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error, rCantCloseScanner);
END;
```

Determining Scanner Capabilities

The Apple scanner driver supports the entire family of Apple scanners. Each scanner provides different features and functions. Consequently, software that uses the Apple scanner driver should be self-configuring and should use the scanner driver's routines to determine the capabilities of the attached scanner. This applies to even the most basic scanning applications. If your program tries to use features that are not supported by the attached scanner, the scanner may not behave predictably.

The scanner driver provides a number of standard functions that supply information about the capabilities of the attached scanner. The ScGetStdFeatures function allows your application to determine the basic capabilities of the attached scanner, including the size of the scanning bed, supported composition modes, and valid values for certain scanning parameters such as brightness and contrast. The ScGetRes function returns information about the resolution values supported by the scanner. The ScGetHalfTones function returns a list of the supported halftone patterns. You may use the function ScGetAdvFeatures to find out which advanced features are supported. (See the section "Using Advanced Scanner Features," later in this chapter.)

Immediately after gaining access to the scanner (with the ScOpen function), your application should gather information about the attached scanner by calling all these routines. Your program can then use the returned information to build appropriate scrolling lists and menu items for the attached scanner. By querying the driver for this information, your application can automatically take advantage of the features and capabilities of new devices.

CHAPTER 2

The Apple Scanner Driver

The following sample code retrieves information about the attached scanner by calling the ScGetStdFeatures, ScGetRes, and ScGetHalfTones driver functions.

```
FUNCTION GetScannerInfo(
      VAR scannerInfo:
                           ScStdFeaturesRec; { Returns scanner features }
      VAR lineArtRes:
                                              { Returns line-art resolutions }
                           ScResPtr;
      VAR halfToneRes:
                                              { Returns halftone resolutions }
                           ScResPtr;
                                              { Returns grayscale res's }
      VAR grayScaleRes:
                           ScResPtr;
                                              { Returns bilevel res's }
      VAR bilevelColorRes: ScResPtr;
      VAR fullColorRes:
                           ScResPtr;
                                              { Returns full color res's }
      VAR halfToneNames:
                           ScHalfTonePtr)
                                              { Returns halftone names }
   : OSErr;
VAR
                                     { Reference number of scanner driver }
      scanRef:
                        Integer;
                                    { Composition mode for scanner features }
      compositionMode: Integer;
      resList:
                        ScResPtr;
                                    { Handle to list of elements }
      numElements:
                                    { Number of elements in list }
                        Integer;
                                    { Error code of any error that occurs }
      error:
                        OSErr;
PROCEDURE HandleError(
      errorCode: OSErr );
   BEGIN
      { Close the driver if it has been left open }
      IF scanRef <> 0 THEN
         error := ScClose( scanRef );
      { Dispose of the resolution and halftone name arrays }
      IF lineArtRes <> NIL THEN
         DisposePtr( Ptr(lineArtRes) );
      IF halfToneRes <> NIL THEN
         DisposePtr( Ptr(halfToneRes) );
      IF grayScaleRes <> NIL THEN
         DisposePtr( Ptr(grayScaleRes) );
      IF bilevelColorRes <> NIL THEN
         DisposePtr( Ptr(bilevelColorRes) );
      IF fullColorRes <> NIL THEN
         DisposePtr( Ptr(fullColorRes) );
      IF halfToneNames <> NIL THEN
         DisposePtr( Ptr(halfToneNames) );
      { Make sure everything's returned NIL }
      lineArtRes := NIL;
      halfToneRes := NIL;
      gravScaleRes := NIL;
      bilevelColorRes := NIL;
```

```
CHAPTER 2
           The Apple Scanner Driver
      fullColorRes := NIL;
      halfToneNames := NIL;
      { Return the error code }
      GetScannerInfo := errorCode;
      EXIT (GetScannerInfo);
   END;
BEGIN
   { Prepare for any failure conditions }
   scanRef := 0;
   lineArtRes := NIL;
  halfToneRes := NIL;
   gravScaleRes := NIL;
  bilevelColorRes := NIL;
   fullColorRes := NIL;
  halfToneNames := NIL;
   { Open scanner driver; get returned scanner reference number }
   error := ScOpen( scanRef );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error );
   { Ask scanner driver for scanner capabilities }
   error := ScGetStdFeatures( scanRef, @scannerInfo,
         SIZEOF (ScStdFeaturesRec) );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error );
   { Get information for each composition mode }
   FOR compositionMode := scLineArt TO scFullColor DO
      IF scannerInfo.composition[compositionMode].resElements <> 0 THEN
         BEGIN
            { Allocate list of supported or preferred resolutions }
            numElements := scannerInfo.composition[compositionMode].
               resElements;
            resList := ScResPtr(NewPtr( numElements *
               SIZEOF (Integer) ));
            IF resList = NIL THEN
               HandleError( MemError );
            { Get the resolution list from scanner driver }
            error := ScGetRes( scanRef, compositionMode, resList );
            IF error <> noErr THEN
               HandleError( error );
            { Assign to the appropriate resolution list }
            CASE compositionMode OF
                                lineArtRes := resList;
               scLineArt:
```

```
CHAPTER 2
        The Apple Scanner Driver
            scHalfTone:
                              halfToneRes := resList;
            scGrayScale:
                               qrayScaleRes := resList;
            scBiLevelColor:
                              bilevelColorRes := resList;
            scFullColor:
                               fullColorRes := resList;
         END;
      END;
{ Get the list of halftone names if halftone mode is supported }
IF scannerInfo.composition[scHalfTone].resElements <> 0 THEN
   BEGIN
      { Allocate list of halftone patterns }
      numElements := scannerInfo.composition[scHalfTone].
            halfToneElements;
      halfToneNames := ScHalfTonePtr(NewPtr( numElements *
            SIZEOF (Str31) ));
      IF halfToneNames <> NIL THEN
         HandleError( MemError );
      { Get list of halftone names from driver }
      error := ScGetHalfTones( scanRef, scHalfTone, halfToneNames );
      IF error <> noErr THEN
         HandleError( error );
   END;
{ Close the scanner driver }
error := ScClose( scanRef );
{ Indicate that this function finished normally }
GetScannerInfo := noErr;
```

END;

The ResolutionIsValid function in the next code sample determines whether a particular resolution, specified by the resolution parameter, is available in the composition mode that the scannerInfo parameter represents. The resList parameter points to the array of resolutions for the composition mode. If the specified resolution is supported, then ResolutionIsValid returns TRUE; otherwise it returns FALSE. The ResolutionIsValid function supports both resolution ranges and lists of discrete resolutions.

```
FUNCTION ResolutionIsValid(
```

```
resolution: Integer; { Resolution to check }
scannerInfo: ScCompRec; { Description of a composition mode }
resList: ScResPtr) { Array of resolutions for composition mode }
: Boolean;
VAR
validResolution: Boolean; { True if resolution found to be valid }
index: Integer; { Index into resList }
```

```
The Apple Scanner Driver
BEGIN
   validResolution := FALSE;
   { Check to see if the desired resolution is OK }
   IF BTST (scannerInfo.resFlags, 0) THEN
      BEGIN
         { resList specifies a range of allowable resolutions }
         IF (resolution >= resList^[1]) AND
               (resolution <= resList^[scannerInfo.resElements]) THEN
            validResolution := TRUE;
      END
   ELSE
      BEGIN
         { resList is an array of allowable resolutions }
         index := 1;
         WHILE (NOT validResolution) AND
               (index <= scannerInfo.resElements) DO
            BEGIN
               validResolution := resolution = resList^[index];
               index := index + 1;
            END;
      END;
   ResolutionIsValid := validResolution;
END;
```

Setting Scan Parameters

CHAPTER 2

After you have determined the scanner's features, set the scan area parameters using the ScSetScanArea function. The scan area parameters tell the scanner where and how a scan should take place. Your program must establish these parameter settings before it can start a scan operation. The values for all these parameters must meet the restrictions established for the attached scanner.

The following sample code sends the desired scanning parameters to the scanner. The SetUpScan function sets the composition mode, resolution, scanning rectangle, brightness, contrast, pixel depth, and halftone pattern based on your selection.

FUNCTION SetUpScan(

| <pre>scanRef:</pre> | Integer; |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| scannerInfo: | <pre>ScStdfeaturesRec;</pre> |
| renderMode: | Integer; |
| resolution: | Integer; |
| <pre>scanRectangle:</pre> | Rect; |
| brightnessLevel: | Integer; |
| contrastLevel: | Integer; |
| pixelDepth: | Integer; |

```
CHAPTER 2
           The Apple Scanner Driver
      ditherPattern:
                        Integer;
      VAR scanInfo:
                        ScScanAreaRec )
   : OSErr;
BEGIN
   { If brightness specified using new method, set high bit }
   IF scannerInfo.composition[renderMode].brightnessRange <> 0 THEN
      brightnessLevel := BOR (brightnessLevel, $8000);
   {If contrast specified using new method, set high bit }
   IF scannerInfo.composition[renderMode].contrastRange <> 0 THEN
      contrastLevel := BOR (contrastLevel, $8000);
   { Set up the ScScanAreaRec }
   scanInfo.reserved := 0;
   scanInfo.numAreas := 1;
   WITH scanInfo.scanAreas[1] DO
      BEGIN
         reserved := 0;
         xDpi := resolution;
         yDpi := resolution;
         scanRect := scanRectangle;
         brightness := brightnessLevel;
         contrast := contrastLevel;
         composition := renderMode;
         bitsPerPixel := pixelDepth;
         halfTone := ditherPattern;
      END;
   { Set the information for the upcoming scan }
   SetUpScan := ScSetScanArea( scanRef, @scanInfo );
END;
```

Starting the Scan and Reading Image Data

Once your application has properly configured the scanner for the scan operation, it starts the scan by calling the ScDoScan driver function. Subsequent calls to this function return image data from the scan. Your program should continue to call ScDoScan repeatedly until the scan is complete and all of the image data is transferred. The following sample code illustrates this process. The application:

- 1. Calculates the number of bytes that the scanner will return for every row of pixels that it returns.
- 2. Calculates the number of bytes that should be accepted from the scanner for every call to ScDoScan. This is always a multiple of byteWidth. If 24-bit color scanning is requested, a buffer is allocated to convert the 24-bit scanned image data to the 32-bit pixels that Color QuickDraw handles.

- 3. Enters the scanning loop, which places the scanned image data in the destination bitmap or pixel map. If a 24-bit color scan is being done, the scanned image data is put into the temporary buffer.
- 4. Places the image data from the temporary buffer in the destination pixel map, in the order compatible with Color QuickDraw.

When ScanImage is completed, destPort contains the complete, scanned image. A precondition of ScanImage is that the scBilevelColor mode not be used.

FUNCTION ScanImage(

```
scanRef:
                   Integer;
                                      { Driver reference number of scanner }
   destPort:
                  GrafPtr;
                                      { GrafPort to scan into }
   scannerInfo:
                  ScStdFeaturesRec; { Features of the scanner }
   scanParms:
                   ScAreaRec)
                                      { Specifications of scan }
: OSErr;
VAR
                                  { Pointer to dest bit/pixel image }
   destImage:
                      Ptr;
   buffer:
                                  { Buffer to hold planar color data }
                      Ptr;
   rovingBuffer:
                                  { Pointer to each line in buffer }
                      Ptr;
   destBuffer:
                      Ptr;
                                  { Pointer to each byte in destImage }
                                  { # bytes in a row of bit/pixel image }
   destRowBytes:
                      Integer;
   byteWidth:
                      Integer;
                                  { # bytes in a row to scan }
   dataLen:
                      LongInt;
                                  { Length of data to read in bytes }
   minDataLen:
                                  { Minimum dataLen for smooth scanning }
                      LongInt;
                                  { Number of rows that were scanned }
   numScannedRows:
                      Integer;
   channel:
                                  { Index into the color channels }
                      Integer;
   index:
                      Integer;
                                  { Index into each color channel }
                                  { Index into rows of the buffer }
   rowNum:
                      Integer;
                                  { Return value for error condition }
   error:
                      OSErr;
```

BEGIN

```
{ Calculate the number of bytes across the scan }
WITH scanParms DO
   IF scanParms.composition = scFullColor THEN
      byteWidth := ((((8 * (scanRect.right - 1)) DIV 8) + 1) -
            ((8 * scanRect.left) DIV 8)) * 3
   ELSE
      byteWidth := (((bitsPerPixel * (scanRect.right - 1)) DIV 8) + 1) -
            ((bitsPerPixel * scanRect.left) DIV 8);
{ Calc minimum dataLen; multiple of byteWidth and >= minReadSize }
WITH scannerInfo.composition[scanParms.composition] DO
   IF minReadSize > byteWidth THEN
      minDataLen := byteWidth * ((minReadSize - 1) DIV byteWidth + 1)
   ELSE
      minDataLen := byteWidth;
{ If scanning 24-bit color, allocate a buffer to rearrange pixel data }
IF scanParms.composition = scFullColor THEN
  buffer := NewPtrClear( minDataLen + byteWidth * 2 );
{ Loop until the scan is done }
error := noErr;
WHILE error = noErr DO
   BEGIN
      { Set maximum amount of data to read at minDataLen }
      dataLen := minDataLen;
      IF (error = noErr) AND (dataLen > 0) THEN
         BEGIN
            IF scanParms.composition = scFullColor THEN
               BEGIN
                  { Scan a piece of the image }
                  error := ScDoScan( scanRef, buffer, dataLen, 0,
                        0, 0);
                  numScannedRows := dataLen DIV byteWidth;
                  rowNum := 1;
                  rovingBuffer := buffer;
                  WHILE (rowNum <= numScannedRows) DO
                     BEGIN
                        FOR channel := 1 TO 3 DO
                           BEGIN
                              FOR index := 0 TO (byteWidth DIV 3) - 1 DO
                                 BEGIN
                                    { Convert image to CQD format }
                                    destBuffer := Ptr(LongInt(destImage)
                                           + channel + index * 4);
                                    destBuffer^ := Ptr(LongInt(
```

```
rovingBuffer) + index +
                                              (byteWidth DIV 3) * (channel -
                                              1))^;
                                     END;
                               END;
                           destImage := Ptr(LongInt(destImage) +
                                  destRowBytes);
                           rovingBuffer := Ptr(LongInt(rovingBuffer) +
                                  byteWidth);
                           rowNum := SUCC (rowNum);
                        END;
                     END
                  ELSE
                     BEGIN
                         { Scan a piece of the image }
                        error := ScDoScan( scanRef, destImage, dataLen, 0,
                               byteWidth, destRowBytes );
                         { If continuing scan, reposition destImage for more }
                        destImage := Ptr(LongInt(destImage) + (dataLen DIV
                               byteWidth) * destRowBytes);
                     END;
               END;
         END;
   { If error was scEOS (end of scan), then everything is OK }
   IF error = scEOS THEN
      error := noErr;
   { Get rid of the buffer used for 24-bit color }
   IF buffer <> NIL THEN
      DisposePtr( buffer );
  ScanImage := error;
END;
```

Using Advanced Scanner Features

Applications can also utilize the advanced features present on the attached scanner. As with standard features, your program should use the facilities provided by the scanner driver to determine which advanced features the scanner supports. The scanner driver's ScGetAdvFeatures function returns information about the advanced capabilities of the scanner, including information about which advanced driver functions are supported. After retrieving this information, your program can then proceed to use the advanced features of the scanner.

The following sample code illustrates the use of the ScGetAdvFeatures driver function. This routine, called FlashLamp, causes the scanner lamp to flash twice, for a period of four seconds each time. The application first determines whether

```
CHAPTER 2
```

the ScSetLamp function exists by checking on the return result of ScGetAdvFeatures. It then calls ScSetLamp only if it is available on the connected scanner.

```
FUNCTION FlashLamp(
      scanRef:
                  Integer)
                             { Reference number of scanner driver }
   : OSErr;
   CONST
      kSetLampPresent = 3; { Bit indicating that ScSetLamp is available }
   VAR
                                     { Tick count at end of Delay }
      lastTicks: LongInt;
                  ScAdvFeaturesRec; { Info about advanced scanner features }
      specials:
      error:
                  OSErr;
                                     { Error code from scanner driver }
   PROCEDURE HandleError(
         error: OSErr);
   BEGIN
      FlashLamp := error;
      EXIT (FlashLamp);
   END;
BEGIN
   { Get the advanced features of the scanner }
   error := ScGetAdvFeatures( scanRef, @specials,
         SIZEOF (ScAdvFeaturesRec) );
   IF error <> noErr THEN
      HandleError( error );
   { Check to see whether ScSetLamp is available }
   IF BTST (specials.controlFlags, kSetLampPresent) THEN
      BEGIN
         { Turn the lamp on }
         error := ScSetLamp( scanRef, true );
         IF error <> noErr THEN
            HandleError( error );
         { Wait four seconds }
         Delay( 240, lastTicks );
         { Now turn the lamp off }
         error := ScSetLamp( scanRef, false );
         IF error <> noErr THEN
            HandleError( error );
      END;
   FlashLamp := noErr;
END;
```

Using the Scanner Driver From Assembly Language

The device driver is named .Scanner, and it is a standard Macintosh driver. The scanner driver supports the Open Driver, Close Driver, Control, Status, and Read routines of the Macintosh Device Manager. Chapter 3 discusses each driver function, and provides assembly-language interface information.

If your application uses the assembly-language interface to the scanner driver, the interface code automatically loads the driver for you.

This chapter describes each of the driver's standard and advanced functions that are available to applications. The data structures used are described in Chapter 4, "Scanner Driver Data Structures," and Chapter 5, "Scanner Driver Summary." If you are writing an application that runs on a Macintosh computer, use the functions for the Apple scanner driver listed in this chapter. If you are writing a scanner application that runs on a computer other than the Macintosh computer, use the *SCSI* commands listed in Chapter 7, "SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners."

Standard Functions

The standard scanner driver functions available to applications are sufficient to support most scanning applications.

Note

Many parameters sent to the driver or returned from the driver are listed as reserved. These parameters must be set to 0 if they are supplied to the driver. If they are parameters returned from the driver, they will always contain a value of 0.

Standard functions that apply to all Scanners are:

- ScAbortScan
- ScClose
- ScDoScan
- ScGetRes
- ScGetStdFeatures
- ScOpen
- ScSetScanArea

The standard function that applies only to the Apple Scanner and the OneScanner is:

ScGetHalfTones

ScAbortScan

The ScAbortScan function cancels the scan in progress, causing the scanner driver to discard any image data that the application has not yet read. While a scan is in progress, an application may call only the ScAbortScan and ScDoScan functions. Calling ScAbortScan when no scan is in progress has no effect.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScAbortScan (refNum: Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScAbortScan is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode set to 1, which is a killIO control call. \blacklozenge

refNum Scanner identifier returned by the ScOpen function.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|---|
| scComErr | -17065 | The communication interface is not |
| | | operating properly |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner has been reset or reinitialized |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScClose

The ScClose function closes the scanner driver, making the driver available to other applications. Before quitting, your application should call ScClose, otherwise, the scanner remains unavailable for use by other applications.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScClose (refNum: Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScClose is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Close routine. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by the ScOpen function.

RESULT CODES

noErr 0 No error

ScDoScan

The ScDoScan function allows your application to read scanned image data that has been collected by the driver. Your application's first call to ScDoScan starts a scan. To retrieve all the image data for a scan, your application should invoke this function repeatedly until it receives the scEOS result code, indicating that there is no more image data. To cancel a scan in progress, call the ScAbortScan function described earlier in this chapter.

During a scan on the Apple Scanner or the OneScanner, any call on any command other ScDoScan will also cause the scan to be aborted. During a scan on the Color OneScanner, only the ScAbortScan command will abort the scan. Any other command will return an scBusy result code.

Before beginning a scan, your application must set the parameters governing that scan using the ScSetScanArea function described later in this chapter.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScDoScan (refNum: Integer; buffer: Ptr;VAR count: LongInt; unused: Integer; byteWidth,rowBytes: Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

```
Calling ScDoScan is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Read
routine with ioParam set as follows: ioBuffer = buffer,
ioReqCount = count, ioActCount = count,
ioPosMode = unused, high word of ioPosOffset = byteWidth,
low word of ioPosOffset = rowBytes. ◆
```

- refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.
- buffer Pointer to the image buffer in the host computer's memory. The driver returns the scanned image data to this location.
- count Maximum number of data bytes the driver is to read into the location specified by buffer. The driver updates this parameter with the count of bytes actually read.

Your application must observe two restrictions when setting this parameter. First, for smooth scanner operation, it must set count to a value at least as large as that stored in the minReadSize field of the ScStdFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures function. Second, your application must set count to a multiple of byteWidth (described later), unless the program is reading the data into contiguous memory.

IMPORTANT

Count must not be less than one scan line. ▲

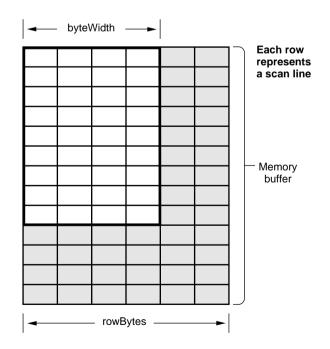
Note that the driver may return less data than requested. Thus your application should always check the returned value of count to find out how much data was actually transferred. The driver always sets count to a multiple of byteWidth unless your program is reading into contiguous memory. If the returned value in count is 0, the driver transferred no data because none was currently available. On the application's second call, to ScDoScan, the driver does not return to the application until data is available from the scanner. To prevent it from freezing while it waits for the scanner, the application may want to pause before issuing the second ScDoScan call.

unused Reserved for future expansion. Set this parameter to 0.

byteWidth Width of a scan line, in bytes. This parameter controls the number of bytes to be returned for each scan line. When reading image data into contiguous memory, your application should set this parameter to 0. Used together, the byteWidth and rowBytes parameters allow your application to scan into noncontiguous memory, effectively placing a rectangle of scanned image data within a larger buffer (see Figure 3-1). The byteWidth parameter indicates the width of the new image data; the rowBytes parameter indicates the width of the receiving buffer. As the driver writes image data into the location specified by buffer, it writes rows that are byteWidth bytes long. At the end of a row, the driver moves to the start of the next row by skipping

(rowBytes-byteWidth) bytes.

Figure 3-1 Scanning into noncontiguous memory



Each scan line must begin and end on a byte boundary. If the scan area for an image does not align with a byte boundary, you must adjust the value of the byteWidth parameter accordingly. Once you have scanned the image, your program should then mask off any unwanted pixels (see Figure 3-2, later in this chapter, for an example of a scan area that does not align with a byte boundary).

You can use the following formulas to calculate the value of the byteWidth parameter for a scan area (be sure to discard the remainders from each of the division operations):

■ 4-bit and 8-bit scanners

([bits per pixel * (scan rectangle right x - 1)] / 8) + 1 - ([bits per pixel * scan area left x] / 8)

Bi-level Color Composition mode

(scan rectangle right x - Scan rectangle left x + 7)/8*3

Remaining composition modes

(((Scan rectangle right x - Scan rectangle left x) * bits per pixel) + 7)/8

For example, if you are using an Apple Scanner or a OneScanner, and you want to scan an image bounded by a rectangle with left and right x coordinates of 10 and 200, respectively, in 16-level gray scale (which requires 4 bits per pixel), you would calculate the value of the byteWidth parameter as follows:

([4 * (200 - 1)] / 8) + 1 - ([4 * 10] / 8) = 95

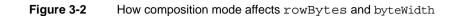
rowBytes Width, in bytes, of the bitmap in the buffer, from the beginning of the bitmap to the next word boundary. This width must always be an even number of bytes. When reading image data into contiguous memory, your program should set this parameter to 0.

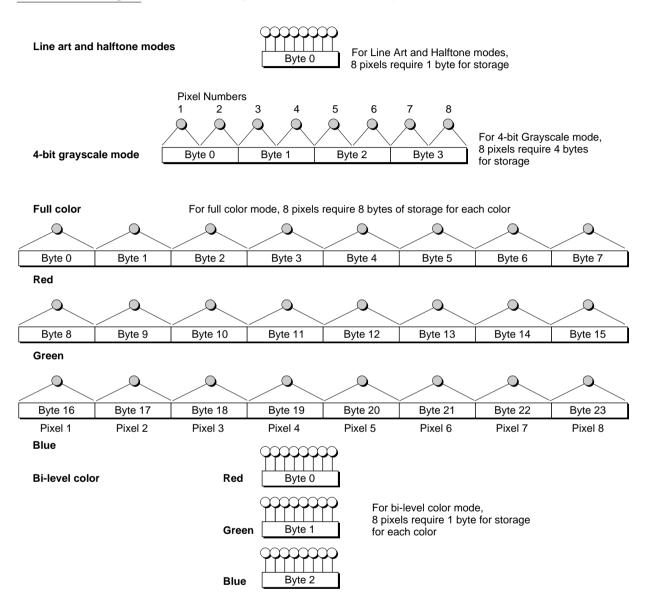
Note that the PixMap and BitMap records both contain fields named rowBytes. These fields define the width, in bytes, of the corresponding pixel map or bitmap, respectively. When reading scanned data into a pixel map or a bitmap, you may find it convenient to use the rowBytes field from the PixMap or BitMap record to supply the value for this parameter.

The values you calculate for byteWidth and rowBytes depend upon the composition mode you have selected. Eight pixels in Line Art mode or Halftone mode require 1 byte of memory, but 8 pixels in Grayscale mode require 4 bytes of memory (in 4-bit mode) or 8 bytes of memory (in 8-bit mode).

Full Color mode uses eight 8-bit pixels for each of the three colors (red, green, and blue). It therefore requires 24 bytes of memory. The 8 single-bit pixels used in Bi-level Color mode require 3 bytes of memory, one for each of the three colors.

Figure 3-2 shows how the composition mode affects these parameters.





| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|---|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scLampErr | -17069 | Lamp malfunction |
| SCEOS | -17070 | End of scan |
| scDimLampErr | -17071 | Dim lamp and reduced scan quality (reissuing |
| acDucit | -17072 | ScDoScan causes scanning to continue and the error to be suppressed) |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy (Color OneScanner only) |

ScGetHalfTones

The ScGetHalfTones function returns a list of the halftone patterns that the attached scanner supports for a specified composition mode. Your application can then present the list and allow the user to select the pattern for a given scanned image. The ScGetHalfTones function returns the pattern information in an ScHalfToneArray structure, described in Chapter 4.

The size of the returned ScHalfToneArray structure varies according to the number of halftone patterns supported by the attached scanner in the specified composition mode. Consequently, your application should use the Memory Manager to allocate the memory for this structure. Your application can determine the number of supported halftone patterns by issuing the ScGetStdFeatures function, described in Chapter 4.

When your application requests a scan in Halftone mode, it must specify the halftone pattern for the scan. You identify the halftone pattern name by supplying its index in the returned array of supported patterns in the halfTone field of the ScAreaRec record. (See "ScAreaRec" in Chapter 4, and "ScSetScanArea," later in this chapter.)

PASCAL

```
FUNCTION ScGetHalfTones (refNum: Integer;compType:
Integer;halfTonePtr: ScHalfTonePtr) : OSErr;
```

Assembly-Language Note

ScGetHalfTones is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Status routine with csCode = 4, csParam = compType, and csParam + 2 = halfTonePtr. \blacklozenge

| refNum | Scanner ic | lentifier | returned | by | ScOpen. |
|--------|------------|-----------|----------|----|---------|
|--------|------------|-----------|----------|----|---------|

compType Composition mode for the request. Your application can determine the valid composition modes for the attached scanner by examining the ScStdFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures function.

halfTonePtr

Pointer to the location where ScGetHalfTones is to return the resulting ScHalfToneArray. The halfToneElements field of the ScCompRec record corresponding to the composition mode specified by compType indicates the number of elements in the ScHalfToneArray structure formatted by ScGetHalfTones. The location specified by halfTonePtr must be able to receive an array of the appropriate size for that number of elements. See "ScHalfToneArray," in Chapter 4, for details on the format and content of this structure.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|------------|--------|------------------------------|
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |

ScGetRes

The ScGetRes function returns information about the resolutions supported by the attached scanner for a specified composition mode. Your application presents this information and allows the user to select a resolution value for an image to be scanned. The ScGetRes function returns the resolution information in an ScResArray structure described in Chapter 4.

The size of the returned ScResArray structure varies according to the number of resolutions supported by the attached scanner in the specified composition mode. Your application should use the Memory Manager to allocate the memory for this structure. Your application can determine the number of supported resolutions by issuing the ScGetStdFeatures function. (See "ScGetStdFeatures," later in this chapter.)

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScGetRes (refNum: Integer; compType: Integer; resPtr: ScResPtr) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

ScGetRes is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Status routine with csCode = 3, csParam = compType, and csParam + 2 = resPtr. \blacklozenge

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

- compType Composition mode for the request. Your application can determine the valid composition modes for the attached scanner by examining the ScStdFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures function.
- resPtr Pointer to the location where ScGetRes is to return the resulting ScResArray structure. The resElements field of the ScCompRec record corresponding to the composition mode specified by compType indicates the number of elements in the ScResArray structure formatted by ScGetRes. The location specified by resPtr must be able to receive an array of the appropriate size for that number of elements. See "ScResArray," in Chapter 4, for details on the format and content of this structure.

If the attached scanner supports resolutions in increments of 1 dpi, the first and last elements in the resulting ScResArray structure represent the upper and lower resolution limits for the scanner. See the description of resFlags field of the ScCompRec record in "ScCompRec," in Chapter 4, for more information.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|------------|--------|---|
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy (Color |
| | | OneScanner only) |

ScGetStdFeatures

The ScGetStdFeatures function returns information about the capabilities of the attached scanner. Your application should use this returned information to restrict the options presented to the user and the values of the scanning control parameters. Your application sets these values by calling the ScSetScanArea function, described later in this chapter. The ScGetStdFeatures function returns the feature information in an ScStdFeaturesRec record, described in Chapter 4.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScGetStdFeatures (refNum: Integer; stdFeaturesPtr: ScStdFeaturesPtr; length: Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

ScGetStdFeatures is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Status routine with csCode = 2, csParam = stdFeaturesPtr, and csParam + 4 = length. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

stdFeaturesPtr

A pointer to the location where the ScGetStdFeatures function is to return a formatted ScStdFeaturesRec record. The length parameter indicates the size of this receiving buffer. See "ScStdFeaturesRec" in Chapter 4, for details on the format and content of this structure.

length Size, in bytes, of the receiving buffer specified by the stdFeaturesPtr parameter. The driver limits the structure to this size so that, in future releases, new information may be added to the ScStdFeaturesRec record without causing existing applications to crash. If your application asks for more data than is available, the ScGetStdFeatures function returns only the available data. By checking the version field in the ScStdFeaturesRec record, your application can determine the size of the returned structure.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|------------|--------|---|
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy (Color |
| | | OneScanner only) |

CHAPTER 3

Scanner Driver Functions

ScOpen

The ScOpen function opens the scanner driver and prepares the driver to receive commands. After invoking a call to ScOpen, the parameter refNum contains the identification number of the scanner. This value must be provided in all other calls to the driver during this session. Your application ends the scanner session by calling the ScClose function, described earlier in this chapter. Only one application at a time may have the scanner driver open.

The device driver is named .Scanner, and it is a standard Macintosh driver.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScOpen (VAR refNum: Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScOpen is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Open routine, except that ScOpen returns an error if another program has already opened the scanner driver. \blacklozenge

refNum Buffer that receives the reference number for use with all other scanner driver functions in this session.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|---------------|--------|---|
| badUnitErr | -21 | Scanner is not connected or, if connected, is not switched on |
| openErr | -23 | Another program has opened the scanner driver |
| scNotFoundErr | -17064 | Scanner not found |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scLampErr | -17069 | Lamp is too dim to operate correctly or CCD is not functioning properly |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy (Color OneScanner only) |

ScSetScanArea

The ScSetScanArea function establishes the parameters that control a scan. Before your application can begin a scan, it must set such scanning parameters as resolution, scan area, brightness, contrast, composition, and number of bits per pixel of the area to be scanned. Your application sets these control parameters by formatting an ScScanAreaRec record and then passing to the ScSetScanArea function a pointer to the area formatted. Your application should determine the valid values for these parameters by issuing the ScGetStdFeatures driver function before formatting the ScScanAreaRec record for this routine. (See the description of ScGetStdFeatures, earlier in this chapter.)

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetScanArea (refNum: Integer; scanAreaPtr: ScScanAreaPtr) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

ScSetScanArea is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 2 and csParam = scanAreaPtr. \blacklozenge

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

scanAreaPtr

Pointer to a formatted ScScanAreaRec record. See the description of ScScanAreaRec, in Chapter 4, for details on the format and content of the structure.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|---------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scParamErr | - 17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scScannerErr | -17968 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |
| | | (Color OneScanner only) |

Advanced Functions

The following sections describe the advanced scanner driver functions that supplement the standard driver functions and allow applications to take advantage of special features of the attached scanner. Most applications do not need to use these functions.

Note

Many parameters sent to the driver, or returned from the driver, are listed as reserved. These parameters must be set to 0 if they are supplied to the driver. If they are parameters returned from the driver, they will always contain a value of 0.

Advanced functions that apply to all scanners:

- ScGetAdvFeatures
- ScSetLamp
- ScSetLED
- ScVendorUnique

Advanced functions for the Apple Scanner:

- ScSetGrayMap
- ScSetGroup3
- ScSetHTPattern
- ScSetNoHome
- ScSetThreshold
- ScWaitButton

Advanced functions for the OneScanner:

- ScGetButton (available ROM version 2.03 or earlier)
- ScResetButton (available only with ROM version 2.03, or earlier)
- ScSetHTPattern
- ScSetNoCal
- ScSetSpeed

Advanced functions for the Color OneScanner:

- ScInvertPixels
- ScLoadGamma
- ScLoadMatrix
- ScSensorSelect
- ScSetScannerAtoD

ScGetAdvFeatures

The ScGetAdvFeatures function identifies which advanced driver features the attached scanner supports. If your application needs to use any of the advanced driver features, it should first use the ScGetAdvFeatures function to determine the advanced capabilities of the attached scanner. This function returns the advanced feature information in an ScAdvFeaturesRec record. (See "ScAdvFeaturesRec," in Chapter 4, for information on the format and content of that structure.)

Your application invokes individual features by calling the appropriate driver functions. A portion of the returned ScAdvFeaturesRec record indicates which of these functions are supported by the attached scanner. Subsequent sections of this chapter discuss each function in detail.

PASCAL

```
FUNCTION ScGetAdvFeatures (refNum: Integer; advFeaturesPtr:
ScAdvFeaturesPtr; length: Integer) : OSErr;
```

Assembly-Language Note

```
Calling ScGetAdvFeatures is equivalent to calling the
Device Manager Status routine with csCode = 5,
csParam = advFeaturesPtr, and csParam + 4 = length. ◆
```

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

advFeaturesPtr

Pointer to the location where the ScGetAdvFeatures function is to return a formatted ScAdvFeaturesRec record. The length parameter indicates the size of this receiving buffer. See "ScAdvFeaturesRec," later in this chapter, for details on the format and content of this structure.

length Size, in bytes, of the receiving buffer identified by the advFeaturesPtr parameter. The driver limits the structure to this size, so that in future releases, new information may be added to the ScAdvFeaturesRec record without causing existing applications to crash. If your application asks for more data than is available, the ScGetAdvFeatures function returns only the available data. By checking the version field in the ScAdvFeaturesRec record, your application can determine the size of the returned structure.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|------------|--------|--|
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |
| | | (Color OneScanner only) |

ScGetButton

The ScGetButton function reads the button state maintained by the scanner driver. The scanner driver uses a Boolean value to track the state of the scanner button. When the user presses the scanner button, the driver sets the value to TRUE. The ScGetButton function allows your application to read the button state.

Your application can set the button state by calling the ScResetButton function, described later in this chapter.

IMPORTANT

ScGetButton is supported only on OneScanners with ROM version 2.03 and earlier. \blacktriangle

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScGetButton (refNum: Integer; VAR button: Boolean) :
OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScGetButton is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 6 and csParam = pointer to button. refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen. button Boolean value set by the scanner driver to match the stored button state. If the user pressed the button after the last call to the ScResetButton function, the driver sets this field to TRUE. Otherwise, the field is FALSE.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScInvertPixels

The ScInvertPixels function inverts the values of full intensity pixels and black pixels. In RGB-direct mode 8, a value of 255 is full intensity, and a value of 0 is black. In other QuickDraw modes, the Macintosh computer, using 8- or 4-bit pixels provides a default grayscale color table where 0 is full intensity and 255 is black. A call to ScInvertPixels with InvertFlag set to true, causes 255 to equal black, and 0 to equal full intensity. A call to ScSetScanArea resets the ScInvertPixels bit to produce an image that is normal or not inverted.

Note

On the Color OneScanner, ScInvertPixels is set to TRUE by the driver when gray or Line Art composition modes are selected in ScSetScanArea. Calls to ScSetScanArea in other modes set ScInvertPixels to FALSE. \blacklozenge

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScInvertPixels (refNum: Integer; InvertFlag : BOOLEAN)
: OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScInvertPixels is equivalent to a Control call with csCode = 17 and csParam = InvertFlag. \blacklozenge

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

InvertFlag

A Boolean value that should be set to FALSE in Grayscale mode, to invert the image. In Bi-level or Full Color mode it should be set to TRUE to get a negative image.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |

ScLoadGamma

The ScLoadGamma function loads a table of values used to change the scanner's intensity curve. Each scanned pixel value is used as an address for this table, and the bytes from the table (R, G, and B) at that address are returned as the pixel's intensity.

PASCAL

```
FUNCTION ScLoadGamma (refNum: Integer; GammaTable:
scGammaTablePtr): OSErr;
```

```
scGammaTablePtr = ^ scGammaTableRec;
scGammaTableRec = PACKED RECORD
RedGamma : ARRAY[1..256] OF BYTE;
GreenGamma : ARRAY[1..256] OF BYTE;
BlueGamma : ARRAY[1..256] OF BYTE;
```

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScGamma is equivalent to calling the Device Manager with csCode = 19 and csParam = scGammaTablePtr. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

Table:scGammaTablePtr

Defines a pointer to an ScGammaTablePtr record.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |
| | | |

ScLoadMatrix

The ScLoadMatrix function loads the matrix multiplier with the array data. The Color OneScanner multiplier is 16 bits. Data should always be left justified, and loaded in row order as follows:

/ 8 9

A call to ScSetScanArea loads the matrix with a set of default values that are specific to the composition mode indicated in the ScSetScanArea call. In Grayscale mode, ScLoadMatrix should be called after an ScSetScanArea call, so that the new matrix values may take effect.

PASCAL

```
FUNCTION ScLoadMatrix (refNum: Integer; Matrix:scMatrixPtr:)
OSErr;
ScMatrixPtr=^scMatrix;
ScMatrix; array [1..9] OF INTEGER
```

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScLoadMatrix is equivalent to calling the Device Manager with csCode = 18 and csParam = scMatrixPtr(Ptr). ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

scMatrixPtr

Defines a pointer to an ScMatrix array.

RESULT CODES

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |

50

ScResetButton

The ScResetButton function resets the button state maintained by the scanner driver. The scanner driver uses a Boolean value to track the state of the scanner button. When the user presses the scanner button, the driver sets that value to TRUE. The ScResetButton function allows your application to set this value to FALSE so that it can detect subsequent button presses.

Your application can read the button state by calling the ScGetButton function, described earlier in this chapter.

IMPORTANT

ScResetButton is supported only on OneScanners with ROM version 2.03 and earlier. ▲

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScResetButton (refNum: Integer; setTrue: Boolean): OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScResetButton is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 13 and csParam = setTrue. \blacklozenge

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

setTrue Control for the button state. Set this parameter to TRUE if you want the driver to reset the button state to FALSE.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScSensorSelect

The ScSensorSelect function allows an application to select which sensor is used for scanning gray on a color scanner.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSensorSelect (refNum: Integer;sensor:Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSensorSelect is equivalent to calling the Device Manager with csCode = 16 and csParam = sensor. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

| sensor | scAllSensors | $= 0 \mathbf{x} 0 0$ |
|--------|---------------|----------------------|
| | scRedSensor | = 0x01 |
| | scGreenSensor | = 0x02 |
| | scBlueSensor | = 0x03 |

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |

ScSetGraymap

The ScSetGraymap function sets the graymap curve used during scanning. By changing the graymap curve used for a scan, your application can enhance the visual detail in either the light or dark portions of the scanned image. In this manner, you can bring forth detail that would normally be lost to human sight. For a description of this phenomenon, see "Gamma Correction" in Chapter 1, "A Scanning Primer."

PASCAL

| FUNCTION | <pre>ScSetGraymap (refNum: Integer; grayMap: Integer) : OSErr;</pre> | | |
|-------------|---|--|--|
| Calling ScS | anguage Note SetGraymap is equivalent to calling the Device Manager tine with csCode = 8 and csParam = grayMap. ◆ | | |
| refNum | Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen. | | |
| grayMap | Indicator of whether the scanner should try to enhance visual details in the scanned image and, if so, the technique to use. The scanner driver supports the following three values for this parameter: | | |
| | scLightDetail Scanner driver artificially enhances detail in the lighter portions of the scanned image. | | |
| | scNormalDetail Scanner driver does not enhance the image in any way, but represents the scanned image as perceived by the human eye. | | |
| | scDarkDetail Scanner driver artificially enhances detail in the darker portions of the scanned image. | | |
| | | | |

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScSetGroup3

The ScSetGroup3 function controls the Group III compression feature of the scanner driver. The Group III compression feature allows the scanner to represent data using standard FAX encoding, to meet the CCITT (Consultative Committee on International Telegraphy and Telephony), Group III standard. If your application enables Group III encoding, the scanner driver uses subsequent calls to the ScSetScanArea function to define areas to be scanned with Group III, one-dimensional encoding. The driver returns data in Group III format until you turn this feature off. When your program reads compressed data, it must set the byteWidth and rowBytes parameters of the ScDoScan function to 0.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetGroup3 (refNum: Integer; compressOn: Boolean) :
OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetGroup3 is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 5 and csParam = compressOn. refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

compressOn Control for Group III encoding. Set this parameter to TRUE to enable Group III encoding for subsequent scans; set it to FALSE to disable Group III encoding.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

CHAPTER 3

Scanner Driver Functions

ScSetHTPattern

The ScSetHTPattern function causes the scanner driver to download a custom halftone pattern into the attached scanner. A halftone pattern consists of a matrix of brightness values. In Halftone mode, the scanner filters scanned data through that matrix, turning result pixels on or off according to the brightness of the scanned pixel relative to the appropriate matrix value. The resulting two-level data emulates gray-scale encoding in much the same way that dithering a color image fools the eye into seeing colors that are not there.

Your application formats the halftone matrix into an ScPatRec record, described in Chapter 4. To select the downloaded pattern for a particular scan, your application must assign a value of -1 to the halfTone field, in the ScAreaRec record passed to the ScSetScanArea function. (See the description of ScSetScanArea, earlier in this chapter.)

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetHTPattern (refNum: Integer; patPtr: ScPatPtr) :
OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetHTPattern is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 4 and csParam = patPtr. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

patPtrPointer to an ScPatRec record that defines the halftone pattern to be
loaded into the attached scanner. See the description of ScPatRec,
Chapter 4, for information on the format and content of this record.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScSetLamp

The ScSetLamp function turns the scanner lamp on and off. Turning on the lamp warms it up in advance of the scan.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetLamp (refNum: Integer; lampOn: Boolean) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetLamp is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 7 and csParam = lampOn. ◆

- refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.
- LampOn Control for the lamp. A value of TRUE turns the lamp on. The scanner driver leaves the lamp on for two minutes after the last SCSI access, and then turns the lamp off. Each subsequent SCSI access causes the driver to turn the lamp on for two more minutes. A value of FALSE turns the lamp off. Because the lamp does not turn off automatically when you close the driver, remember to turn it off before calling the ScClose function to close the driver.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |

CHAPTER 3

Scanner Driver Functions

ScSetLED

The ScSetLED function controls the setting of the scanner light-emitting diode (LED).

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetLED (refNum: Integer; LEDOn: Boolean) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetLED is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 12 and csParam = LEDOn. ◆

- refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.
- ledOn Control for the scanner LED. Set this parameter to TRUE if you want the scanner to turn the LED on. Set this parameter to FALSE to turn the LED off.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |
| | | (Color OneScanner only) |

ScSetNoCal

The ScSetNoCal function controls whether the scanner calibrates itself for lamp intensity before scanning. The fluorescent lamp in the scanner loses intensity as it ages. By default, the scanner calibrates for lamp intensity, so that it can compensate for the lower light output of an older lamp. This calibration step takes a few seconds. ScSetNoCal allows your application to skip this calibration step, thus reducing scan time. However, skipping lamp calibration also compromises scan quality, and your application should turn off calibration only for preview scans.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetNoCal (refNum: Integer; noCalMode: Boolean) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetNoCal is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 14 and csParam = noCalMode. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

noCalMode Indicator of whether the scanner should calibrate the scan for the current lamp intensity before beginning subsequent scans. Set this parameter to TRUE to force lamp calibration before each scan. Set this parameter to FALSE to skip lamp calibration.

| | noErr scComErr scResetErr scParamErr | 0 -17065 -17066 -17067 17068 | No error Communication-interface malfunction Scanner reset or reinitialized Illegal parameter or command |
|--|---|--|---|
| scScannerErr -17068 Internal scanner malfunction | | 1,00, | |

ScSetNoHome

The ScSetNoHome function controls whether the carriage assembly returns to the home position after the scanner has finished a scan. By default, the scanner driver configures the attached scanner to return the carriage to the home position after each scan. However, this default may result in a great deal of carriage movement when your application conducts a series of complex scans. Your application can speed up complex scanning operations by using this function to override that default. The carriage assembly then remains where it was at the end of the scan.

In addition, your application can move the carriage assembly to a particular position by issuing the ScSetNoHome function to override the homing action and then scanning an area of infinitely small size (with the ScDoScan function).

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetNoHome (refNum: Integer; noHome: Boolean) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetNoHome is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 6 and csParam = noHome. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

noHome Control for the carriage assembly after a scan. Set this parameter to TRUE to prevent the carriage assembly from returning to the home position. Set it to FALSE to force the carriage home after each scan.

| 0 | No error |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | -17066 -17067 |

ScSetScannerAtoD

The ScSetScannerAtoD function gives your application direct access to the analogto-digital converter used in the scanning process. It enables the application to control brightness and contrast, using Vrt and Vrb, which override any other brightness and contrast controls. The call to ScSetScannerAtoD should be made before the call to ScSetScanArea. This ensures that the settings specified by ScSetScannerAtoD take effect.

Note

This call is valid for the Color OneScanner only, for grayscale and color composition modes. \blacklozenge

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetScannerAtoD (refNum: Integer; Vrt, Vrb :BYTE):
OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetScannerAtoD is equivalent to calling the Device ManagerControl routine with csCode = 17 and csParam = Vrt, csParam+2 = Vrb. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

Vrt, Vrb: Use Vrt to specify the top reference voltage for the ADC (analog-todigital converter). Use Vrb to specify the bottom reference voltage for the ADC. A value of 0 in either Vrt or Vrb indicates that the Brightness and Contrast should be used instead, Vrt and Vrb are disabled. A value of 1 through 255 indicates the scanner should use a relative value. The default of 255 covers the full dynamic range.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |

ScSetSpeed

The ScSetSpeed function controls the speed of data transfer between the scanner driver and the attached scanner. The scanner driver supports three transfer speeds: normal, high-speed, and fast. Normal and high-speed transfers guarantee data integrity no matter how often your application calls ScDoScan to read scanned *data*. However, the transfer protocol between the scanner and scanner driver introduces some overhead. Fast transfers eliminate this protocol overhead and thus substantially reduce data transfer time. By eliminating the protocol overhead, however, fast transfers also eliminate the guarantee of data integrity.

Consequently, your application should use fast transfers only when you can be sure that your program can absorb all the scanned image data. In general, you should use fast transfer only with high-performance CPUs and only when sufficient memory is available to store the entire scanned image. The scanner driver supports only normal speed transfers on low-performance systems.

Note

If interrupts occur during a scan operation in fast transfer speed, the scan may be affected. \blacklozenge

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetSpeed (refNum: Integer; speed: Integer) : OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

ScSetSpeed is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 11 and csParam = speed. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

speedData transfer speed for subsequent scanner operations. The scannerdriver supports the following three values for this parameter:

scSpeedNormal

Selects normal transfer. Data integrity is guaranteed.

scSpeedHigh

Selects high-speed transfer. Data integrity is guaranteed.

scSpeedFast

Selects fast transfer. Data integrity is guaranteed.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScSetThreshold

The ScSetThreshold function sets the threshold level that the scanner uses with automatic background adjustment to determine which *dots* are black and which are white when scanning in Line Art mode.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetThreshold (refNum: Integer; threshold: Integer) :
OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetThreshold is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 9 and csParam = threshold. ◆

- refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.
- threshold Values range from 1 to the value of the brightnessMax field in the ScCompRec record for the appropriate composition mode. (See the description of ScGetStdFeatures earlier in this chapter, and in Chapter 4.) A value of 0 selects a scanner-dependent default.

RESULT CODES

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communi |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner re |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal para |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal sc |
| | | |

No error Communication-interface malfunction Scanner reset or reinitialized Illegal parameter or command Internal scanner malfunction

ScSetWaitButton

The ScSetWaitButton function controls whether the scanner driver waits for the user to press the scanner button before beginning a scan. If your application enables this feature and then calls ScDoScan to begin a scan, the driver does not actually start the scan operation until the user presses the scanner button. You can use this feature to ensure that the user has placed the image on the scanner glass before scanning begins.

PASCAL

FUNCTION ScSetWaitButton (refNum: Integer; waitButton: Boolean)
: OSErr;

Assembly-Language Note

Calling ScSetWaitButton is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 10 and csParam = waitButton. ◆

refNum Scanner identifier returned by ScOpen.

waitButton Control that determines whether the scanner driver waits for the user to press the scanner button before beginning a scan. If you set this parameter to TRUE, the driver scanner waits for the user to push the button. A value of FALSE turns this feature off.

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | |

ScVendorUnique

The ScVendorUnique function allows your application to invoke scanner functions that are unique to a particular scanner. This function provides a mechanism for passing a parameter type and corresponding parameter data to the scanner.

PASCAL

```
FUNCTION ScVendorUnique (refNum: Integer; paramType: Integer;
paramPtr: Ptr) : OSErr;
```

Assembly-Language Note

| Calling ScVendorUnique is equivalent to calling the Device Manager Control routine with csCode = 8192, csParam = paramType, and csParam + 2 = paramPtr. ◆ | | | |
|---|---------------|--|--|
| refNum | Scanner ident | ifier returned by ScOpen. | |
| paramType | Parameter typ | pe. The following values are valid: | |
| | scUniqueUn | park Instructs the scanner to move the carriage to the home position. The paramPtr parameter is not used. | |
| | scUniquePa | rk Instructs the scanner to move the carriage to the shipment lock position. The paramPtr parameter is not used. | |
| | scUniqueAb | Instructs the scanner to position the carriage at the scan line specified in the paramPtr field. A value of 0 causes the scanner to place the carriage at the beginning of the scan area. Other values must indicate a valid y-axis position in increments of $1/1200$ of an inch. | |
| | scUniqueRe | IPos Instructs the scanner to move the carriage to a position relative to its current position. The value of the paramPtr field indicates the direction and distance of the movement. Positive values move the carriage forward; negative values move the carriage backwards. The distance is expressed in increments of $1/_{1200}$ of an inch. A value of 0 does not move the carriage. | |
| | scUniqueSe | tCRAM Sets the contents of the scanner's calibration RAM. The paramPtr parameter must contain a pointer to a contiguous buffer of 2550 bytes. Each byte of parameter data contains the new calibration data for the corre- | |

| | scUniqueGetCRAM |
|----------|--|
| | Retrieves the contents of the scanner's calibration RAM. |
| | The paramPtr parameter must contain a pointer to a |
| | contiguous buffer of 2550 bytes. Each returned byte |
| | contains the calibration data for the corresponding pixel sensor in the CCD array. |
| paramPtr | Parameter data appropriate to the parameter type specified in |
| | paramType. |

| noErr | 0 | No error |
|--------------|--------|--|
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner reset or reinitialized |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy |

Your application uses scanner driver data structures to communicate with the scanner driver. This chapter describes the format and content of two classes of data structures: standard and advanced. Standard data structures are used with standard driver functions, and advanced data structures are used with advanced driver functions.

Standard Data Structures

This section describes the data structures your application uses to interact with standard scanner driver functions. (See "Standard Functions," in Chapter 3, "Scanner Driver Functions.")

The structures described in this section are:

- ScAreaRec
- ScCompRec
- ScHalfToneArray
- ScResArray
- ScScanAreaRec
- ScStdFeaturesRec

ScAreaRec

The ScAreaRec record contains information defining a region to be scanned. Your application formats one ScAreaRec record for each area to be scanned in an operation, then passes those records to the ScSetScanArea driver function in an ScScanAreaRec record. (See the description of ScSetScanArea, in Chapter 3, "Scanner Driver Functions.")

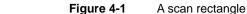
Each ScAreaRec record specifies the scanning parameters for an area, including brightness, contrast, and composition mode, as well as the coordinates defining the scan area itself. These parameter values must be valid in the context of the scanner capabilities defined in the ScStdFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures driver function, described in Chapter 3.

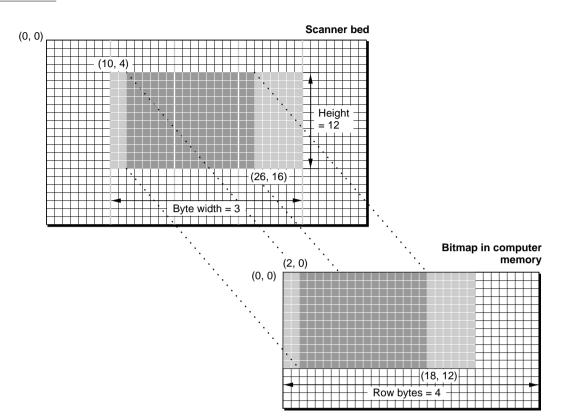
The following Pascal code shows the layout of the ScAreaRec record.

```
TYPE ScAreaRec = RECORD
reserved : LongInt;
xDpi : Integer;
yDpi : Integer;
scanRect : Rect;
brightness : Integer;
contrast : Integer;
composition : SignedByte;
bitsPerPixel : SignedByte;
halfTone : Integer;
END;
```

The fields are defined as follows:

| reserved | This field is reserved for future expansion. Set this field to 0. |
|----------|---|
| xDpi | This field indicates the resolution in pixels per inch in the horizontal direction (along the x-axis of the document). |
| yDpi | This field indicates the resolution in pixels per inch in the vertical direction (along the y-axis of the document). |
| | The xDpi and yDpi fields specify the resolution at which the image is acquired. To scan the image without distortion, assign equal values to each of these two fields. You can achieve special effects by setting these parameters to different values. |
| scanRect | This field specifies the size and the position of the scan area. The upper-right corner of the scanner glass as you look down at the scanner (which corresponds to the upper-left corner of the original document) is located at coordinates (0, 0). The scan area coordinates are referenced, in dots, from that position, using the specified horizontal and vertical resolutions, determined by the values of the xDpi and yDpi fields. Figure 4-1 on page 70 shows a sample document scan area with the coordinates (10, 4) and (26, 16). |



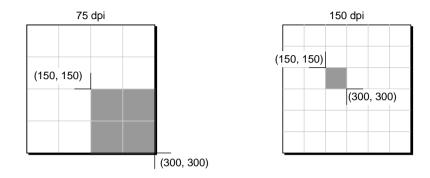


In Figure 4-1 the dark gray area indicates the desired image data and the light gray area indicates the extra data the scanner also returns. Even though pixels to the left and right of the desired scan area are not really part of the scan area, all the pixels up to the byte boundary (shown by the byte width value in the figure) are returned. Because the scanner always returns data in 1-byte quantities, your application program must mask off these excess pixels if you wish to read scan areas that are not byte-aligned directly into existing bitmaps. Calculate the byte width and height from the scan area coordinates, so that your application program knows how much data will be returned and how wide each line will be.

The area that the scanner actually scans depends on both the scan area and the resolution. Figure 4-2 illustrates how the scan area and the resolution interact to define the size and location of the area that is actually scanned. (In the figure, each square represents 1 square inch of the scan area.) In both diagrams, the scan area has been set to (150, 150), (300, 300), which is defined by the parameter scanRect. The only difference between the two diagrams is the resolution. Note that although the position and size of the area being scanned have changed, the amount of data returned for each area remains the same.

Figure 4-2

Scan areas at different resolutions



brightness This field controls the brightness of the resulting image. The scanner maps the visible spectrum over numeric values from 1 to either 255, or a maximum value specified by the brightnessMax field in the appropriate ScCompRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures function. (See the description of ScGetStdFeatures, in Chapter 3, "Scanner Driver Functions.") The value of the brightness field selects a point in that range. Lower numeric values translate to darker picture elements. Higher values translate to lighter elements.

> You determine the range of valid values for the brightness field by examining the brightnessRange field in the appropriate ScCompRec record. If the value of the brightnessRange field is 0, you must set the brightness field to a value ranging from 1 to the value of the brightnessMax field in the ScCompRec record. If the value of the brightnessRange field is not 0, you may set the brightness field to a value ranging from 1 to 255, or from 1 to the value of the brightnessMax field. If you use values greater than the value of brightnessMax, you must set the high-order bit of the brightness field to 1.

In summary, if the value of the brightnessRange field is 0, then valid values for the brightness field range from 0 to the value of brightnessMax. If brightnessRange is not set to 0, then values of brightness may range from 0 to the value of brightnessRange or from \$8000 to \$80FF.

The scanner driver interprets this value in different ways, depending upon the specified composition mode. In Line Art mode, brightness determines the threshold level at which a pixel goes from black to white. The scanner renders as black pixels those gray values that are higher than the brightness threshold. It renders those that are lower than the threshold as white pixels. Increasing the value of this field increases the overall brightness level of the resulting image (because it raises the threshold at which an element goes from light to dark). Decreasing the value of this field decreases the overall brightness level. A value of 0 selects a default brightness value in the scanner.

In Grayscale and Halftone modes, the brightness field positions the center point of the visible spectrum within the supported range of values. The scanner driver then divides portions of the two resulting parts into a number of gray levels. Your application uses the contrast field to control the amount of the visible spectrum devoted to gray levels. Higher brightness values yield a lighter image, because more of the dynamic range is devoted to lighter shades of gray. Lower values yield a darker image.

contrast This field interacts with the brightness field to control the contrast of the scanned image rendered in Halftone or Grayscale mode. The scanner divides a portion of the visible spectrum into a number of gray-level segments of equal size. The contrast field determines the amount of the visible spectrum devoted to gray levels on either side of the spectrum's center point (which is specified by the brightness field). Those portions of the spectrum that lie outside the gray areas are rendered as black or white.

> You determine the range of valid values for the contrast field by examining the contrastRange field in the appropriate ScCompRec record. If the value of the contrastRange field is 0, you must set the contrast field to a value ranging from 1 to the value of the contrastMax field in the ScCompRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures function. (See the description of ScGetStdFeatures, in Chapter 3.) If the value of the contrastRange field is not 0, you may set the contrast field to a value ranging from 1 to 255, or from 1 to the value of the contrastMax field. If you use values greater than the value of contrastMax, you must set the high-order bit of the contrast field to 1.

In summary, if the value of the contrastRange field is 0, then valid values for the contrast field range from 0 to the value of contrastMax. If contrastRange is not set to 0, then the values of contrast may range from 0 to the value of contrastRange or from \$8000 to \$80FF.

In the Color OneScanner, increasing the value of the contrast parameter decreases the contrast level, because the scanner renders a greater portion of the visible spectrum as gray tones. Decreasing the value of this parameter increases the contrast level. A value of 0 selects a default contrast value in the scanner. This parameter is valid only in Halftone and Grayscale modes.

In the Apple Scanner and the OneScanner, increasing the parameter increases the contrast level, and decreasing the parameter decreases the contrast level.

composition

This field specifies the composition mode for the region to be scanned and determines the type of data to be acquired. The composition modes are as follows:

| Composition mode | Composition value |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| Line Art mode | scLineArt |
| Halftone mode | scHalfTone |
| Grayscale mode | scGrayScale |
| Bi-level Color mode | scBilevelColor |
| Full Color mode | scFullColor |

bitsPerPixel

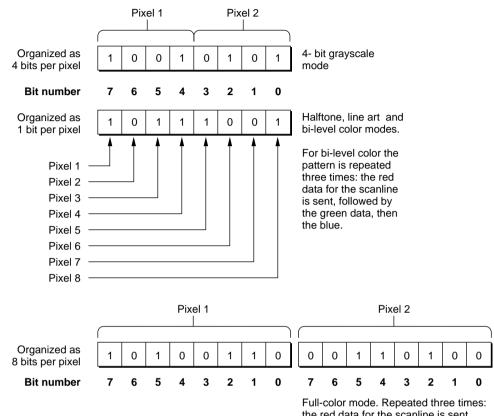
This field determines the number of bits required to represent one pixel of data returned from the scanner. Valid values are determined by the setting of the bitsPerPixel field in the appropriate ScCompRec record returned by the ScGetStdFeatures function. (See the description of ScGetStdFeatures, in Chapter 3.)

The graphics data bits are packed in the return byte to the closest power of 2, and they are always left-aligned with the remaining bits set to 0, as shown in Figure 4-3 on page 74. For example, when you set the bitsPerPixel field to 4 (for 4-bit Grayscale mode), two pixels share one byte, when you set the bitsPerPixel field to 1 (Halftone and Line Art modes), eight pixels share one byte. When you set the parameter bits per pixel to 24, one pixel occupies three bytes.

halfTone This field specifies the halftone pattern that the scanner uses to render halftone images. This field contains an index into the array of halftone pattern names in the ScHalfToneArray structure returned by the ScGetHalfTones function, or a special value. (See the description of ScGetHalfTones, in Chapter 3.) To select a specific pattern, set this field to the 1-relative index of the entry containing the name of the desired pattern. A value of 0 selects the default halftone pattern (a 4-by-4 spiral). A value of -1 selects a pattern your application previously downloaded to the scanner driver. (See the description of ScSetHTPattern, in Chapter 3.)

Figure 4-3

Orientation of returned data bits



the red data for the scanline is sent, followed by the green data, then the blue.

ScCompRec

The ScCompRec record contains information describing a composition mode. Composition modes (or scan modes) indicate the mode used by the scanner. Apple scanners support such composition modes as Line Art, Halftone, and Grayscale. (See "Composition," in Chapter 1, for more information.)

The ScGetStdFeatures driver function returns information about compositions supported by the attached scanner in an array of ScCompRec records formatted within the returned ScStdFeaturesRec record. By examining those ScCompRec records, your application can determine the valid composition modes for the attached scanner and the valid parameter ranges for the supported types.

The following Pascal code shows the layout of the ScCompRec record:

```
TYPE ScCompRec = PACKED RECORD
brightnessRange : Byte;
contrastRange : Byte;
reserved : Byte;
resFlags : Byte;
resElements : Integer;
halfToneElements : Integer;
brightnessMax : Integer;
contrastMax : Integer;
bitsPerPixel : LongInt;
minReadSize : Integer;
END;
```

The fields are defined as follows:

brightnessRange

This field indicates the number of brightness levels available on the attached scanner. If the value of the brightnessRange field is 0, you must set the brightness field in any ScAreaRec records passed to the ScSetScanArea driver function to a value ranging from 1 to the value of the brightnessMax field. If the value of the brightnessRange field is not 0, you may set the brightness field to a value ranging from 1 to 255 or from 1 to the value of the brightnessMax field. If you use values greater than the value of brightnessMax, you must set the high-order bit of the brightness field to 1.

contrastRange

This field indicates the number of contrast levels available on the attached scanner. If the value of the contrastRange field is 0, you must set the contrast field in any ScAreaRec records passed to the ScSetScanArea driver function to a value from 1 to the value of the contrastMax field. If the value of the contrastRange field is not 0,

you may set the contrast field to a value from 1 to 255, or from 1 to the value of the contrastMax field. If you use values greater than the value of contrastMax, you must set the high-order bit of the contrast field to 1.

reserved This field is unused. It is set to 0.

resFlags This field contains bit flags that define scanner capabilities:

| 1 dp | i bit 0 | Indicates whether the scanner supports resolution in increments of 1dpi. The value of this flag affects the way your application should interpret the ScResArray structure returned by the ScGetRes driver function. (See the description of ScGetRes, in Chapter 3.) |
|------|---------|--|
| | | 0 = Scanner does not support increments of 1 dpi |
| | | 1 = Scanner supports increments of 1 dpi |

resElements

This field indicates the total number of elements in the ScResArray structure returned by the ScGetRes driver function for this composition mode. (See the description of ScGetRes, in Chapter 3.) The elements in the ScResArray structure specify the resolutions supported by the attached scanner in this composition mode.

The driver sets this field to 0 for unsupported composition modes. Use this value as a flag to indicate that a particular mode is not supported by the attached scanner.

halfToneElements

This field indicates the total number of elements in the ScHalfToneArray structure returned by the ScGetHalfTones driver function for the selected mode. (See the description of ScGetHalfTones, in Chapter 3.) The elements in the ScHalfToneArray structure specify the names of the halftone patterns supported by the attached scanner.

The driver sets this field to 0 for composition modes (such as Line Art and Grayscale) that do not support halftone patterns.

brightnessMax

This field indicates the number of brightness levels available on the attached scanner in cases where the brightnessRange field is set to 0. Your application should then use this value as the upper limit for the value of the brightness field in any ScAreaRec records passed to the ScSetScanArea driver function. If brightnessRange is not set to 0, then your application may set the brightness field to values up to 255. In this case, your application must also set the high-order bit of the brightness field to 1.

contrastMax

This field indicates the number of contrast levels available on the attached scanner in cases where the contrastRange field is set to 0. Your application should then use this value as the upper limit for the value of the contrast field in any ScAreaRec records passed to the ScSetScanArea driver function. If contrastRange is not set to 0, then your application may set the contrast field to values up to 255. In this case, your application must also set the high-order bit of the contrast field to 1.

bitsPerPixel

This field contains bit flags indicating the number of bits that may be used to encode a single pixel in the given composition mode. Note that more than one flag may be set to 1, indicating that the attached scanner supports more than one encoding option for that composition mode. In such cases, your application must use the bitsPerPixel field of the ScAreaRec record passed to the ScSetScanArea driver function to indicate the pixel encoding option for the scan. (See the description of ScSetScanArea, in Chapter 3.)

The bits are defined as follows:

| bit 0 | 1 bit per pixel available |
|--------|-----------------------------|
| bit 1 | 2 bits per pixel available |
| bit 2 | 3 bits per pixel available |
| bit 3 | 4 bits per pixel available |
| | |
| • | |
| • | |
| bit 30 | 31 bits per pixel available |
| bit 31 | 32 bits per pixel available |

A bit is set to 1 if the corresponding encoding option is supported.

minReadSize

This field indicates the minimum number of data bytes your application should read with each call to the ScDoScan function. (See the description of ScDoScan, in Chapter 3.) If your application issues read requests for less data than is specified by this parameter, or if your application calls ScDoScan too infrequently, the scanner may not operate smoothly for every scan.

ScHalfToneArray

The ScHalfToneArray structure contains a list of halftone pattern names. The ScGetHalfTones driver function returns the list of supported halftone patterns in an ScHalfToneArray structure. (See the description of ScGetHalfTones, in Chapter 3, "Scanner Driver Functions.") Each entry in the array corresponds to a given halftone pattern. The pattern name is stored in a Pascal string that can be no longer than 31 characters.

When your application requests a scan in Halftone mode, it must specify the halftone pattern for the scan. You identify the halftone pattern name by supplying its index in the returned array of supported patterns in the halfTone field of the ScAreaRec record. (See the descriptions of ScAreaRec and ScSetScanArea, in Chapter 3.)

The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScHalfToneArray structure.

```
TYPE String31 = String[31];
ScHalfTonePtr = ^ ScHalfToneArray;
ScHalfToneArray = ARRAY[1..1] OF String31;
```

The data types are defined as follows:

String31 This data type is a 31-character Pascal string containing the name of a supported halftone pattern.

ScHalfTonePtr

This data type defines a pointer to a halftone array stored as an ScHalfToneArray structure.

ScHalfToneArray

This data type defines the halftone array itself. An ScHalfToneArray structure contains entries defining halftone patterns. Each entry in the array corresponds to a halftone pattern and contains the pattern name stored as a Pascal-formatted string of up to 31 characters in length. Table 4-1 shows a sample of halftone array elements.

 Table 4-1
 Samples of halftone array elements

| Halftone array element index | Element contents |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 | "4-by-4 matrix, Spiral" |
| 2 | "4-by-4 matrix, Bayer" |
| 3 | "5-by-5 matrix, Spiral" |
| | |
| • | • |
| • | • |
| п | Halftone matrix <i>n</i> |

ScResArray

The ScResArray record contains a list of scanning resolutions. Each resolution is represented by an integer corresponding to the dots per inch (dpi) measure of the resolution. For example, 300 dpi would be represented in an ScResArray entry by a value of 300. The ScGetRes driver function returns the list of resolutions supported by the attached scanner in an ScResArray record. (See the description of ScGetRes, in Chapter 3.)

The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScResArray record:

```
TYPE ScResPtr = ^ScResArray;
ScResArray = ARRAY[1..1] OF Integer;
```

The data types are defined as follows:

- ScResPtr This data type defines a pointer to a resolution array stored as an ScResArray record.
- ScResArray This data type defines the resolution array itself. An ScResArray record contains entries defining resolutions. Each entry in the array corresponds to a given resolution, and the entry contains the resolution value expressed as an integer corresponding to the dpi measure for the resolution. In addition, for scanners that support resolution in increments of 1 dpi (see the preceding description of the resFlags field of the ScCompRec record), the first and last values in the array specify the lower and upper limits of resolution, respectively. Note that, in this case, additional array elements may be included for convenience in building resolution lists that can be displayed.

ScScanAreaRec

The ScScanAreaRec record defines all the areas to be processed in a given scan. Your application formats the ScScanAreaRec record and passes a pointer to that formatted record to the ScSetScanArea driver function. (See the description of ScSetScanArea, in Chapter 3.) The array of ScAreaRec records contained in the ScScanAreaRec record defines the individual scan areas.

The following Pascal code shows the layout of the ScScanAreaRec record:

```
TYPE ScScanAreaPtr = ^ScScanAreaRec;
ScScanAreaRec = RECORD
reserved : LongInt;
numAreas : Integer;
scanAreas : ARRAY[1..1] OF ScAreaRec;
END;
```

The fields and data types are defined as follows:

ScScanAreaPtr

This data type defines a pointer to a scan area record stored as an ScScanAreaRec record.

- reserved This field is reserved for future use. Set it to 0.
- numAreas This field indicates the number of individual scan areas defined for the scan, and it therefore corresponds to the number of ScAreaRec records specified by the ScanAreas field. Your application must set numAreas to a value ranging from 1 to the maximum number of secondary areas supported by the attached scanner plus 1. The maximum number of secondary areas is given in the secondaryMax field of the ScAdvFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetAdvFeatures function. (See the description of ScGetAdvFeatures, in Chapter 3.)
- scanAreas This array of ScAreaRec records defines the individual scan areas for the scan operation. Each area to be scanned must be defined with its own ScAreaRec record. The numAreas field indicates the number of ScAreaRec records in the array. The first ScAreaRec record in the array defines the primary scan area. Any subsequent array entries define secondary scan areas. Secondary scan areas are supported on the Apple Scanner. (See the description of ScGetAdvFeatures, in Chapter 3.)

ScStdFeaturesRec

The ScStdFeaturesRec record contains information describing the capabilities of the attached scanner. The ScGetStdFeatures driver function returns information about the capabilities of the attached scanner in an ScStdFeaturesRec record. (See the description of ScGetStdFeatures, in Chapter 3.)

The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScStdFeaturesRec record:

```
TYPE ScStdFeaturesPtr = ^ ScStdFeaturesRec;
ScStdFeaturesRec = RECORD
scannerType : ResType;
version : Integer;
scanWidthNum : Integer;
scanWidthDen : Integer;
scanLengthNum : Integer;
scanLengthDen : Integer;
composition : ARRAY[scLineArt..scFullColor) OF ScCompRec;
END;
```

The fields and data type are defined as follows:

ScStdFeaturesPtr

This data type defines a pointer to an ScStdFeaturesRec record.

scannerType

This field identifies the type of the attached scanner:

| APL4 | Apple Scanner |
|------|------------------|
| APL8 | OneScanner |
| APLC | Color OneScanner |

version This field indicates the structure version number.

scanWidthNum

This field contains the numerator of the scan area width, which is described later in this section.

scanWidthDen

This field contains the denominator of the scan area width, which is described later in this section.

scanLengthNum

This field contains the numerator of the scan area length, which is described later in this section.

scanLengthDen

This field contains the denominator of the scan area length, which is described later in this chapter.

The scanWidthNum, scanWidthDen, scanLengthNum, and scanLengthDen fields specify the maximum size of the scan area by defining its width and length in inches. The width numerator, scanWidthNum, divided by the width denominator, scanWidthDen, gives the width in inches. The length numerator, scanLengthNum, divided by the length denominator, scanLengthDen, gives the length in inches. Your application must never define a scan area that extends beyond these boundaries.

For example, the field values for a scanner that can accommodate an 8.5-by-14-inch page are as follows:

| Field | Value |
|---------------|-------|
| scanWidthNum | 17 |
| scanWidthDen | 2 |
| scanLengthNum | 14 |
| scanLengthDen | 1 |

Therefore, at 75 dpi, the maximum width setting allowable in the scanRect field of any ScAreaRec records passed to the ScSetScanArea driver function is given by the following formula:

([(75 * 17) / 2] / 2) * 2 = 636

Note that the value ([75 * 17] / 2) was truncated to an even byte boundary. Be sure to discard the remainder from all division operations.

composition

This field contains an array of ScCompRec records, each of which defines the characteristics of the support offered for a single composition mode. Your application can access the ScCompRec record for a particular composition mode by using the appropriate constant for that mode as an index into this array. Here are the possible composition modes and their corresponding index values:

| Composition mode | Index value |
|---------------------|----------------|
| Line Art mode | scLineArt |
| Halftone mode | scHalfTone |
| Grayscale mode | scGrayScale |
| Bi-level Color mode | scBilevelColor |
| Full Color mode | scFullColor |

If a scanner does not support a particular composition mode, the driver sets the resElements field in the appropriate ScCompRec record to 0.

Advanced Data Structures

This section describes the data structures your application uses to interact with advanced scanner driver functions. (See "Advanced Functions,", in Chapter 3, for descriptions of these driver functions).

The structures described in this section are:

- ScAdvFeaturesRec
- ScPatRec
- ScGammaTableRec
- ScMatrix

ScAdvFeaturesRec

The ScAdvFeaturesRec record contains information describing the advanced capabilities of the attached scanner. The ScGetAdvFeatures driver function returns information about the advanced features of the attached scanner in an ScAdvFeaturesRec record. (See the description ScGetAdvFeatures, in Chapter 3.)

The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScAdvFeaturesRec record:

```
TYPE ScAdvFeaturesPtr = ^ScAdvFeaturesRec;
ScAdvFeaturesRec = RECORD
reserved : LongInt;
version : Integer;
secondaryMax : Integer;
downLoadFlags : LongInt;
restrictFlags : LongInt;
controlFlags : LongInt;
END;
```

The fields and data type are defined as follows:

ScAdvFeaturesPtr

This data type defines a pointer to an ScAdvFeaturesRec record.

reserved This field is reserved for future expansion.

version This field indicates the structure version number.

secondaryMax

This field indicates whether the scanner supports secondary scan areas and, if so, how many of them. If the scanner does not support secondary areas, the driver sets the field to 0. If the scanner does support secondary areas, the parameter contains the maximum number of secondary areas allowed.

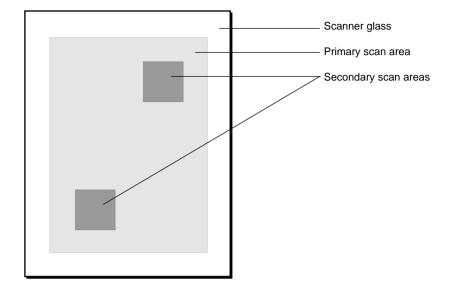
Secondary scan areas are "cut out" of the primary scan area and can accommodate some differences in scan parameters. For example, your application can use this feature to mix line art data and halftone data in one document.

Your application must comply with several restrictions to use secondary scan areas successfully. The secondary scan areas must lie within the primary scan area and must have the same horizontal and vertical resolution settings as the primary area. In addition, all secondary areas must use the same composition mode, contrast, brightness, and halftone parameters. Figure 4-4 shows the relationship between a primary scan area and secondary scan areas.

Your application program specifies secondary scan areas when defining the scan area with the ScSetScanArea function. (See the description of ScSetScanArea, in Chapter 3.)

Figure 4-4

Primary and secondary scan areas



downLoadFlags

This field indicates the halftone matrix dimensions supported by the attached scanner. These matrix dimensions apply to the halftone patterns your application downloads to the scanner with the ScSetHTPattern driver function. (See the description of ScSetHTPattern, in Chapter 3.) If downLoadFlags is nonzero, then the attached scanner supports the ScSetHTPattern function. Each matrix dimension corresponds to a bit in downLoadFlags, as shown here. For supported dimensions, the driver sets the corresponding bit to 1.

| bit 0 | 2-by-2 matrix |
|------------|-----------------|
| bit 1 | 3-by-3 matrix |
| bit 2 | 4-by-4 matrix |
| | |
| • | |
| • | |
| bit 14 | 16-by-16 matrix |
| bits 15–31 | Reserved |

Some scanners may support asymmetrical halftone matrixes, where the x and y matrix dimensions differ. For scanners that support asymmetrical matrixes, the driver sets bit 3 of the restrictFlags field to 1. In addition, the driver sets the bits in the downLoadFlags field to indicate the valid range of values for both the x and y matrix dimensions. For example, if bit 3 of restrictFlags is set to 1, and bits 0, 1, and 2 in downloadFlags are set to 1, then the attached scanner supports 2-by-2, 3-by-3, 4-by-4, 2-by-3, 2-by-4, 3-by-2, 3-by-4, 4-by-2, and 4-by-3 matrixes.

restrictFlags

This field indicates restrictions that your application program may safely ignore when setting the scanner control parameters with the ScSetScanArea function. (See the description of ScSetScanArea, in Chapter 3.) Each restriction type corresponds to a bit in restrictFlags, as shown here. If the driver sets a bit to 1, your application may take advantage of the corresponding feature.

| bit 0 | Horizontal and vertical resolution settings may be of different values |
|-----------|--|
| bit 1 | Secondary scan areas may be of the same type as the primary scan area |
| bit 2 | Automatic background adjustment is available in Line Art mode. Set the brightness field in the appropriate ScAreaRec record to –1 to enable automatic background adjustment |
| bit 3 | Downloaded halftone matrixes may have different x and y dimensions. (See the description of ScSetHTPattern, in Chapter 3.) |
| bits 4–31 | Reserved for future use. Do not use |

controlFlags

This field indicates the advanced driver functions that the attached scanner supports. Each bit in controlFlags corresponds to an advanced function, as shown here. If the attached scanner supports an advanced driver function, the driver sets the corresponding bit to 1.

- bit 0 ScSetGroup3 function supported
- bit 1 ScSetGraymap function supported
- bit 2 ScSetThreshold function supported
- bit 3 ScSetLamp function supported
- bit 4 ScSetNoHome function supported
- bit 5 ScSetWaitButton function supported
- bit 6 ScSetSpeed function supported
- bit 7 ScSetLed function supported
- bit 8 ScGetButton, ScResetButton functions supported
- bit 9 ScSetNoCal function supported
- bit 10 ScLoadGamma function supported
- bit 11 ScLoadMatrix function supported
- bit 12 ScInvertPixels function supported
- bit 13 ScScannerSetAtoD function supported
- bit 14 ScSensorSelect function supported
- bits 15-31 Reserved for additional control call functions. These bits are set to 0.

ScPatRec

The ScPatRec record defines a pattern for generating scan images in Halftone mode. The halftone pattern consists of a matrix of brightness values. In Halftone mode, the scanner filters scanned data through that matrix, turning resulting pixels on or off according to the brightness of the scanned pixel relative to the appropriate matrix value. Figure 4-5 shows this process. The resulting two-level data emulates gray-scale encoding in much the same way that dithering a color image fools the eye into seeing colors that are not there.

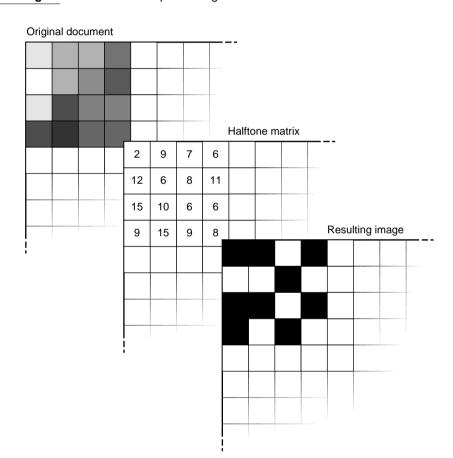
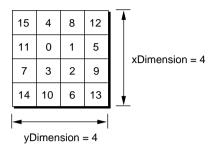


Figure 4-5 Halftone processing

Your application loads a custom halftone pattern matrix into the attached scanner by formatting an ScPatRec record and passing that record to the ScSetHTPattern driver function. (See the description of ScSetHTPattern, in Chapter 3.) Figure 4-6 on page 88 shows the brightness threshold values for a 4-by-4 spiral matrix.

Figure 4-6

The electronic halftone matrix for a 4-by-4 spiral pattern



The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScPatRec record:

```
TYPE ScPatPtr = ^ScPatRec;
ScPatRec = PACKED RECORD
xDimension : Byte;
yDimension : Byte;
patData : PACKED ARRAY[1..64] OF Byte;
END;
```

The fields and data type are defined as follows:

```
ScPatPtr This data type defines a pointer to an ScPatRec record.
```

- xDimension This field specifies the horizontal (x-axis) dimension of the halftone matrix. The value of this field must meet the restrictions defined by the downLoadFlags field in the ScAdvFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetAdvFeatures function.
- yDimension This field specifies the vertical (y-axis) dimension of the halftone matrix. The value of this field must meet the restrictions defined by the downLoadFlags field in the ScAdvFeaturesRec record returned by the ScGetAdvFeatures function.
- patData This one-dimensional array contains the halftone pattern matrix. Your application concatenates rows of values from the matrix into this array. The driver then rebuilds the original matrix from these values, using the dimensions specified by the xDimension and yDimension fields. The values in patData specify relative brightness thresholds in the range of 0 to (xDimension * yDimension) 1 in the Apple Scanner, and a range of 0 to 255 in the OneScanner. Figure 4-6 presents a 4-by-4 matrix with the 16 threshold values set to generate a spiral pattern.

CHAPTER 4

Scanner Driver Data Structures

ScGammaTableRec

ScGammaTableRec loads a table of values used to change the scanner's intensity curve. Each scanned pixel value is used as an address for the table, and the three bytes from the table (R, G, and B) at that address are returned as the pixel's intensity.

The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScLoadGamma record:

```
TYPE ScGammaTablePtr = ^ScGammaTableRec;
ScGammaTableRec = PACKED RECORD
RedGamma : ARRAY[1..256] OF BYTE;
GreenGamma : ARRAY[1..256]OF BYTE;
BlueGamma : ARRAY[1..256]OF BYTE;
END
```

The fields and data type are defined as follows:

ScGammaTablePtr

This data type defines a pointer to an ScGammaTableRec record.RedGammaThis field contains a table of intensity values for the Red channel.GreenGammaThis field contains a table of intensity values for the Green channel.

BlueGamma This field contains a table of intensity values for the Blue channel.

ScMatrix

ScMatrix loads the matrix multiplier with the contents of the array data. The Color OneScanner multiplier is 16 bits: 15 bits of data, which should be left justified, and one sign bit.

The following Pascal code shows the format of the ScMatrix record:

```
TYPE ScMatrixPtr = ^ScMatrix;
ScMatrix : ARRAY[1..9]OF INTEGER;
```

The fields and data types are defined as follows:

ScMatrixPtr

This data type defines a pointer to an ScMatrix record.

ScMatrix The ScMatrix field contains signed integer values to be loaded into the matrix multiplier. Data should be left-justified.

For further information, see Appendix B, "Optimizing the Color OneScanner."

CHAPTER 5

Scanner Driver Summary

This chapter summarizes the constant values, data types, and functions for the standard and advanced features available in the scanner driver.

Standard Constants

The following constants define values used in standard driver functions.

CONST

| scLineArt | = | 0; |
|----------------|---|----|
| scHalfTone | = | 1; |
| scGrayScale | = | 2; |
| scBilevelColor | = | 3; |
| scFullColor | = | 4; |

Advanced Constants

The following constants define values used in advanced driver functions.

```
CONST
   scLightDetail = 0; { GrayMap 0 }
   scNormalDetail = 1; { GrayMap 1 }
                 = 2; { GrayMap 2 }
   scDarkDetail
   scSpeedNormal = 0; { NORMAL Speed, slow with
                        handshaking }
   scSpeedHigh = 1;
                        { HIGH Speed, fast with
                        handshaking }
   scSpeedFast = 2;
                        { FAST Speed, fast without
                        handshaking }
{ Apple (Vendor) Unique Param Type Constants }
   scUniqueUnpark
                     = 0;
                              {Unpark the carriage }
   scUniquePark
                     = 1;
                              {Park the carriage }
   scUniqueAbsPos
                     = 2;
                              {Absolute carriage positioning }
   scUniqueRelPos
                     = 3;
                              {Relative carriage positioning}
   scUniqueSetCRAM
                              {Set CRAM Data (always 2550 bytes)}
                     = 5;
   scUniqueGetCRAM
                     = 6;
                              {Get CRAM Data (always 2550 bytes)}
```

```
CHAPTER 5
```

| scAllSensor | = | 0x00 |
|----------------|---|-------|
| scRedSensor | = | 0x01 |
| scGreenSensor | = | 0x02 |
| scBlueSensor | = | 0x03 |
| Control Flags | | |
| scSetGroup3 | = | 1; |
| scSetGamma | = | 2; |
| scSetThreshold | = | 4; |
| scSetLampOn | = | 8; |
| scSetNoHome | = | 16; |
| scSetWait | = | 32; |
| scSetSpeed | = | 64; |
| scSetLed | = | 128; |
| scGetButton | = | 256; |
| scSetNoCal | = | 512; |
| scLoadGamma | = | 1024; |
| scLoadMatrix | = | 2048; |
| scInvertPixels | = | 4096; |
| scSetAtoD | = | 8192 |
| scSensorSelect | = | 16384 |

Standard Data Types

The following data types are used by standard driver functions:

```
ScAreaRec = RECORD
    reserved : LongInt;
    xDpi : Integer;
    yDpi : Integer;
    scanRect : Rect;
    brightness : Integer;
    contrast : Integer;
    composition : SignedByte;
    bitsPerPixel : SignedByte;
    halfTone : Integer;
    END;
```

```
CHAPTER 5
```

```
TYPE
ScCompRec = PACKED RECORD
   brightnessRange : Byte;
   contrastRange : Byte;
   reserved : Byte;
   resFlags : Byte;
   resElements : Integer;
   halfToneElements : Integer;
   brightnessMax : Integer;
   contrastMax : Integer;
   bitsPerPixel : LongInt;
   minReadSize : Integer;
END;
String31 = STRING[31];
ScHalfTonePtr = ^ScHalfToneArray;
ScHalfToneArray = ARRAY[1..1] OF String31;
ScResPtr = ^scResArray;
ScResArray = ARRAY[1..1] OF Integer;
ScScanAreaPtr = ^ScScanAreaRec;
ScScanAreaRec = RECORD
   reserved : LongInt;
   numAreas : Integer;
   scanAreas : ARRAY[1..1] OF ScAreaRec;
END;
ScStdFeaturesPtr = ^ScStdFeaturesRec;
ScStdFeaturesRec = RECORD
   scannerType : ResType;
   version : Integer;
   scanWidthNum : Integer;
   scanWidthDen : Integer;
   scanLengthNum : Integer;
   scanLengthDen : Integer;
   composition : ARRAY[scLineArt..scFullColor+1] OF
      ScCompRec;
END;
```

94

Advanced Data Types

The following data types are used by advanced driver functions. For further information see the section "ScAdvFeaturesRec," in Chapter 4.

```
TYPE
ScAdvFeaturesPtr = ^ScAdvFeaturesRec;
ScAdvFeaturesRec = RECORD
  reserved : LongInt;
  version : Integer;
   secondaryMax : Integer;
  downLoadFlags : LongInt;
  restrictFlags : LongInt;
   controlFlags : LongInt;
END;
ScPatPtr = ^ScPatRec;
ScPatRec = PACKED RECORD
   xDimension : Byte;
   yDimension : Byte;
patData : PACKED ARRAY[1..64] OF Byte;
END;
ScGammaTablePtr = ^ scGammaTableRec;
   ScGammaTableRec = PACKED RECORD
            RedGamma : ARRAY[1..256]OF BYTE;
            GreenGamma : ARRAY[1..256] OF BYTE;
            BlueGamma : ARRAY[1..256] OF BYTE;
   END;
scMatrixPtr = ^ scMatrix
scMatrix : ARRAY[1..9] OF INTEGER
END;
```

CHAPTER 5

Scanner Driver Summary

Standard Functions

The following Pascal declarations define the standard driver functions:

```
FUNCTION ScAbortScan (refNum: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScClose (refNum: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScDoScan (refNum: Integer;
      buffer: Ptr;
      VAR count: LongInt;
      unused: Integer;
      byteWidth,rowBytes: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScGetHalfTones (refNum: Integer;
      compType: Integer;
      halfTonePtr: ScHalfTonePtr) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScGetRes (refNum: Integer;
      compType: Integer;
      resPtr: ScResPtr) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScGetStdFeatures (refNum: Integer;
      stdFeaturesPtr: ScStdFeaturesPtr;
      length: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScOpen (VAR refNum: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetScanArea (refNum: Integer;
      scanAreaPtr: ScScanAreaPtr) : OSErr;
```

Advanced Functions

The following Pascal declarations define the advanced driver functions:

```
CHAPTER 5
Scanner Driver Summary
FUNCTION ScResetButton (refNum: Integer;
      setTrue: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSensorSelect (refNum: Integer; sensor: INTEGER) :
OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetGrayMap (refNum: Integer;
      grayMap: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetGroup3 (refNum: Integer;
      compressOn: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetHTPattern (refNum: Integer;
      patPtr: ScPatPtr) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetLamp (refNum: Integer;
      lampOn: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetLed (refNum: Integer;
      ledOn: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetNoCal (refNum: Integer;
      noCalMode: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetNoHome (refNum: Integer;
      noHome: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetScannerAtoD (refNum: Integer; Vrt, Vrb : BYTE) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetSpeed (refNum: Integer;
      speed: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetThreshold (refNum: Integer;
      thresholdLevel: Integer) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScSetWaitButton (refNum: Integer;
      waitButton: Boolean) : OSErr;
FUNCTION ScVendorUnique (refNum: Integer;
      paramType: Integer; paramPtr: Ptr) : OSErr;
```

Function Result Codes

Table 5-1 lists the function result codes returned for the driver functions.

Note

There are two types of error code. The first type indicates driver errors and always has five digits. The second type indicates system errors and may have one through four digits. The two-digit codes shown in the following table indicate I/O system errors. ◆

Table 5-1Result codes

| Result | Code | Description |
|---------------|--------|--|
| noErr | 0 | No error |
| statusErr | -18 | Attached scanner does not support any advanced features |
| badUnitErr | -21 | Scanner is not connected, or if connected, is not switched on |
| openErr | -23 | Another program has opened the scanner driver |
| scNotFoundErr | -17064 | Scanner was not found |
| | | Scanner was not turned on |
| | | Multiple SCSI devices have the same ID number |
| | | Scanner has not completed the power-on initialization sequence |
| | | SCSI cable was not properly connected |
| | | SCSI bus was not properly terminated |
| | | Scanner and scanner-driver revision were not correctly matched |
| scComErr | -17065 | Communication-interface malfunction |
| | | Scanner was turned off during scan |
| | | SCSI cable was unplugged during scan |
| scResetErr | -17066 | Scanner has been reset unexpectedly; parameters must be reset |
| scParamErr | -17067 | Illegal parameter or command |
| | | Driver received command for feature not supported by the scanner |
| scScannerErr | -17068 | Internal scanner malfunction |
| | | RAM or ROM failure |
| | | Scanner needs servicing |
| | | |

continued

Table 5-1 Result codes (continued)

| Result | Code | Description |
|--------------|--------|---|
| scLampErr | -17069 | Lamp is not on |
| | | Lamp needs replacing |
| | | CCD array malfunction |
| SCEOS | -17070 | End of scan (code occurs in response to scDoScan command when there is no data left to send) |
| scDimLampErr | -17071 | The fluorescent light is functioning, but its output has dropped below 70 percent, and is too low for a scan to be accurate |
| | | Lamp needs replacing |
| | | The white target underneath the scanning bed is dirty (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | The three mirrors are dirty (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | The aperture plate is dirty (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | The CCD is dirty or bad (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | Scanning may continue if you receive result code –17071, but the quality of the output may not be satisfactory |
| statusErr | -18 | Attached scanner does not support any advanced features |
| scBusy | -17072 | Driver call made while scanner is busy (Color OneScanner only) |

Device Manager Equivalents

Your application can invoke driver functions by calling the Macintosh Device Manager. Table 5-2 lists the Device Manager routines that are equivalent to the standard driver functions, and Table 5-3 lists the Device Manager routines for the advanced driver functions.

| Driver function | Device Manager routine |
|------------------|---|
| ScAbortScan | Control routine with csCode = 1 (killIO) |
| ScClose | Close routine |
| ScDoScan | Read routine with ioParam set as follows: ioBuffer = buffer, ioReqCount = count, ioActCount = count, ioPosMode = unused, high word of ioPosOffset = byteWidth, and low word of ioPosOffset = rowBytes |
| ScGetHalfTones | Status routine with csCode = 4, csParam = compType, and csParam + 2 = halfTonePtr |
| ScGetRes | Status routine with csCode = 3, csParam = compType, and csParam + 2 = resPtr |
| ScGetStdFeatures | Status routine with csCode = 2, csParam = stdFeaturesPtr, and csParam + 4 = length |
| ScOpen | Open routine |
| ScSetScanArea | Control routine with csCode = 2 and csParam = scanAreaPtr |

 Table 5-2
 Device Manager equivalents for standard driver functions

| Driver function | Device Manager routine |
|------------------|--|
| ScGetAdvFeatures | Status routine with csCode = 5, csParam = advFeaturesPtr, and csParam + 4 = length |
| ScGetButton | Control routine with csCode = 6 and csParam = pointer to button |
| ScInvertPixels | Control routine with csCode = 15, and csParam = InvertFlag (Boolean) |
| ScLoadGamma | Control routine with csCode = 19, and csParam = scGammaTablePtr (Ptr) |
| ScLoadMatrix | Control routine with csCode = 18, and csParam = scMatrixPtr (Ptr) |
| ScResetButton | Control routine with csCode = 13 and csParam = setTrue |
| ScSensorSelect | Control routine with csCode = 16, and csParam = sensor |
| ScSetGraymap | Control routine with csCode = 8 and csParam = grayMap |
| ScSetGroup3 | Control routine with csCode = 5 and csParam = compressOn |
| ScSetHTPattern | Control routine with csCode = 4 and csParam = patPtr |
| ScSetLamp | Control routine with csCode = 7 and csParam = lampOn |
| ScSetNoCal | Control routine with csCode = 14 and csParam = noCalMode |
| ScSetLed | Control routine with csCode = 12 and csParam = ledOn |
| ScSetScannerAtoD | Control routine with csCode = 17, and csParam = Vrt (Byte) and csParam+2 = Vrb (Byte) |
| ScSetNoHome | Control routine with csCode = 6 and csParam = noHome |
| ScSetSpeed | Control routine with csCode = 11 and csParam = speed |
| ScSetThreshold | Control routine with csCode = 9 and csParam = thresholdLevel |
| ScSetWaitButton | Control routine with csCode = 10 and csParam = waitButton |
| ScVendorUnique | Control routine with csCode = 8192, csParam = paramType, and csParam + 2 = paramPtr |

| Table 5-3 | Device Manager equivalents for advanced driver functions |
|-----------|--|

If you are writing an application for a computer other than a Macintosh computer, you must use the Small Computer System Interface (SCSI), for which this chapter provides a general introduction. To communicate directly with the Apple scanners, you must understand how to use the SCSI commands, which are described in detail in Chapter 7.

If you are writing an application for the Macintosh computer, use the Apple scanner driver functions described in Chapters 2 through 5. There is no advantage, in this case, in sending commands directly to the scanner.

SCSI Hardware Interface

This section describes the interface presented by the SCSI hardware on the Apple scanners, including the supported bus phases. It also addresses unique SCSI features of the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner.

Connector assignments

Apple scanners incorporate a standard SCSI interface, using drivers and receivers that can support a maximum cable length of 6 meters. Table 6-1 lists pin assignments for the 50-pin SCSI connector.

| Table 6-1 | SCSI connector pin assignments | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Pin Number. | Signal | Description | Direction from host |
| 1–12, 14–25, 35-37, 39, 40, 42 | GND | Ground | |
| 13 | None | Open | |
| 26 | -DB(0) | Data bit 0 | Input/output |
| 27 | –DB(1) | Data bit 1 | Input/output |
| 28 | -DB(2) | Data bit 2 | Input/output |
| 29 | -DB(3) | Data bit 3 | Input/output |
| 30 | -DB(4) | Data bit 4 | Input/output |
| 31 | -DB(5) | Data bit 5 | Input/output |
| 32 | -DB(6) | Data bit 6 | Input/output |
| 33 | –DB(7) | Data bit 7 | Input/output |
| 34 | –DB(P) | Data parity bit | Input/output |
| 38 | -TERMPWR | Terminator power | Output |
| 41 | -ATN | Attention | Input |

| | | 1 | -) |
|-------------|--------|--------------|---------------------|
| Pin Number. | Signal | Description | Direction from host |
| 43 | -BSY | Busy | Input/output |
| 44 | –ACK | Acknowledge | Input |
| 45 | -RST | Reset | Input/output |
| 46 | -MSG | Message | Output |
| 47 | -SEL | Select | Input/output |
| 48 | -C/D | Control/data | Output |
| 49 | -REQ | Request | Output |
| 50 | -I/O | Input/output | Output |
| | | | |

| Table 6-1 | SCSI connector pin assignments (continued) |
|-----------|--|
|-----------|--|

The signals are defined as follows:

| –DB(0-7), –DB(P) | Eight data signals –DB(0-7) and the parity bit, –DB(P). These signals form the SCSI data bus. –DB7 is the most significant bit and has the highest priority during the Arbitration phase (see "Bus Phases," later in this section). A data bit is defined as a 1 when the corresponding signal value is TRUE. Apple scanners present odd parity. Note that the parity bit is not valid during the Arbitration phase. | |
|---------------------|---|---|
| -TERMPWR | Terminator power with the following | r. The Apple scanners present terminator power g characteristics: |
| | Voltage: | 4.0 volts DC to 5.25 volts DC |
| | Current: | 800 milliampere (mA) minimum source drive capability 1.0 mA maximum sink capability |
| -ATN | Attention. The host computer drives this signal low to indicate an Attention condition, informing the scanner that the host has a message ready. The scanner receives this message by performing a Message Out phase. The host may assert this condition at any time except during the Arbitration and Bus Free phases. | |
| -BSY | Busy. Any device on the SCSI bus may hold this signal active to indicate that it is using the bus. The Busy signals from all devices on the SCSI bus are combined, so that if any device holds the signal active all other devices can detect that the bus is in use. | |
| -ACK | Acknowledge. The host computer drives this signal to acknowledge receipt of data during a –REQ/–ACK data transfer handshake. | |
| -RST | Reset. The host computer drives this signal low to indicate a Reset condition. This condition takes precedence over all other phases and conditions. The scanner may trigger a Reset condition by asserting this signal for a minimum of 25 microseconds. The Reset signals from all devices on the SCSI bus are combined, so that if any device holds the signal active all other devices can detect the Reset condition. | |

| -MSG | Message. The scanner drives this signal low during the Message phase. The scanner asserts the $-C/D$, $-I/O$, and $-MSG$ signals during the $-REQ/-ACK$ handshake for this phase. During the Message In phase, the scanner may send a message to the host. During the Message Out phase, the scanner may request that a message be sent from the host to the scanner. The scanner may invoke the Message Out phase at its convenience, in response to an Attention condition asserted by the host. |
|------|---|
| -SEL | Select. The host computer drives this signal low to select the scanner, or any other SCSI device on the bus. |
| -C/D | Control/Data. The scanner drives this signal low to indicate it is sending control information to the host. If this signal is high, the scanner is sending data. |
| -REQ | Request. The scanner drives this signal low to request a –REQ/–ACK data transfer handshake. |
| -I/O | Input/output. The scanner uses this signal to control the direction of data transfer on the data bus. If this signal is TRUE (low), the scanner is sending data to the host. If this signal is FALSE (high), the scanner is receiving data from the host. The direction of data flow is referenced to the host CPU. |

Bus Phases

The SCSI interface supports the following eight bus phases:.

| Bus Free | Indicates that no SCSI devices are using the bus and that the bus is available for other users. The scanner goes to the Bus Free phase within 1 millisecond of completing a SCSI transaction. |
|-------------|---|
| Arbitration | Allows a SCSI device to gain control of the bus. Note that either the host or the scanner may gain control of the bus. |
| Selection | Allows the host to select the scanner. The host selects the scanner by asserting the –SEL signal. The scanner responds to a selection request within 200 milliseconds. |
| Reselection | Allows the scanner to reconnect to the host. This phase allows the scanner to resume an operation that was previously interrupted. |
| Command | Allows the scanner to request command information from the host. See Chapter 7, "SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners," for information on the SCSI commands supported by the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner. |
| Data | Allows data to flow between the host and the scanner. This phase comprises both the Data In and Data Out phases. The state of the -I/O signal indicates the direction of data flow. During the Data In phase, the scanner sends data to the host. During the Data Out phase, the host sends data to the scanner. See Chapter 7, "SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners," for information on the data formats supported by the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner. |
| Status | Allows the scanner to send status information to the host. See "SCSI Status Codes," later in this chapter, for information on the status codes sent by the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner. |

Message Allows message information to flow between the host and the scanner. This phase comprises both the Message In and Message Out phases. The state of the I/O signal indicates the direction of message flow. During the Message In phase, the scanner sends message information to the host. During the Message Out phase, the host sends message information to the scanner. Several messages may be exchanged in either phase. See "SCSI Messages," later in this chapter, for information on the messages supported by the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner.

The Command, Data, Status, and Message phases are referred to as the *information transfer phases* because they are used together to transfer data or control information between devices on the SCSI bus. The host and scanner communicate with defined commands, which are transmitted in packets. (See Chapter 7, "SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners.") These message exchanges are called *transactions*.

The information transfer phases work as follows: after the host sends a command to the scanner, the transaction switches to the Data or Status phase, depending on the command issued. If the command specifies a data transfer, the transaction enters the Data phase and the host and scanner exchange data appropriate to the command. If the command does not have a Data phase, the transaction goes straight to the Status phase. The scanner then sends 1 byte of status information to the host (see "SCSI Status Codes," later in this chapter). After transmitting the status information, the transaction switches to the Message phase, where one or more messages may be exchanged between the scanner and the host. (See "SCSI Messages," later in this chapter.)

SCSI Implementation by Apple Scanners

This section discusses details of the SCSI implementation supported by the Apple scanners. The following paragraphs describe the SCSI processing associated with hardware resets, scanner start up when power is turned on, and error processing during data transfers.

The scanner invokes a hardware reset whenever the host asserts the -RST (Reset signal) or sends a BUS DEVICE RESET message to the scanner. The scanner immediately enters the Bus Free phase, cancels any scan that is in progress, and restores its internal variables and parameter settings to their default values.

When power to the scanner is turned on, the scanner sets its SCSI *sense data* to unit attention (Sense key value of \$06). The scanner accepts only REQUEST SENSE and INQUIRY commands—it rejects any other commands with a CHECK CONDITION status. You must issue a REQUEST SENSE command to clear the unit attention sense data before issuing any other SCSI commands.

If the scanner detects an error in a command header or parameter block, it does not execute the command. The scanner sets its SCSI sense data to illegal request (Sense key value of \$05) and returns a CHECK CONDITION status. Note that the scanner always reads the entire command header before returning any error status. If a command includes optional parameters, the scanner reads all of the parameter data before returning the CHECK CONDITION status.

SCSI Status Codes

Apple scanners return a status code after every SCSI command, during the status bus phase, as shown below.

| GOOD (\$00) | Indicates that the scanner has successfully completed the command. |
|-----------------------------|---|
| CHECK CONDITION (\$02) | Indicates that the scanner has encountered an error. You should issue the REQUEST SENSE command to retrieve the SCSI sense data from the scanner. |
| RESERVATION CONFLICT (\$18) | The scanner returns this status whenever it receives a command from a device that has not reserved the scanner. |

SCSI Messages

SCSI messages allow devices on the SCSI bus to manage their interactions. The following sections discuss the messages supported by each of the Apple scanners.

Apple Scanner Message

The Apple Scanner supports a single 1-byte message.

COMMAND COMPLETE (\$00)

The Apple Scanner sends this message to indicate that it has finished processing a command and has returned a status code to the initiator. After sending this message, the scanner enters the Bus Free phase by releasing the -BSY line.

OneScanner and Color OneScanner Messages

The OneScanner and Color OneScanner support identical messages of one or more bytes. In addition, one or more messages may be sent during a single Message bus phase. However, no single message may be split across more than one Message phase. The OneScanner and Color OneScanner support the following messages:

| COMMAND COMPLETE (\$00) | The scanner sends this message to indicate that it has finished processing a command and has returned a status code to the initiator. After sending this message, the scanner enters the Bus Free phase by releasing the -BSY line. |
|----------------------------|--|
| DISCONNECT (\$04) | The scanner sends this message to indicate that it is going to disconnect temporarily from the bus. The scanner reconnects later to complete the current operation. After sending this message, the scanner enters the Bus Free phase by releasing the -BSY line. Note that it is an error for the scanner to release -BSY without first issuing a COMMAND COMPLETE or DISCONNECT message. |
| ABORT (\$06) | The host sends this message to the scanner to clear the current operation. The scanner goes to the Bus Free Phase. |
| MESSAGE REJECT (\$07) | The scanner sends this message to reject a message it has received. After sending this message, the scanner enters the Command phase. |
| BUS DEVICE RESET (\$0C) | The host sends this message to the scanner to clear all current commands and force a reset operation. After recognizing this message, the scanner goes to the Bus Free Phase. |
| IDENTIFY (\$80 or \$C0) | Either the host or the scanner sends one of these messages to establish a connection across the SCSI bus. The host always sends a message code of \$C0, indicating that the scanner may terminate the connection by issuing a DISCONNECT message. When establishing a connection, the scanner always sends a message code of \$80. |

The SCSI commands recognized by the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner make up a subset of the *American National Standards Institute (ANSI)* SCSI command set. Table 7-1 lists the commands and hexadecimal operation code used by the Apple scanners. This chapter describes each command in the order shown in Table 7-1. It describes the command format first for the Apple Scanner, then for the OneScanner, and finally for the Color OneScanner.

| Command | Hex opcode | |
|--------------------------|---------------|--|
| TEST UNIT READY | \$00 | |
| REQUEST SENSE | \$03 | |
| INQUIRY | \$12 | |
| MODE SELECT | \$15 | |
| RESERVE | \$16 | |
| RELEASE | \$17 | |
| MODE SENSE | \$1A | |
| SCAN | \$1B | |
| SEND DIAGNOSTIC | \$1D | |
| DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS | \$24 | |
| GET WINDOW PARAMETERS | \$25 | |
| READ | \$28 | |
| SEND | \$2A | |
| OBJECT POSITION | \$31 | |
| GET DATA STATUS | \$34 | |
| | | |

Table 7-1 SCSI commands and operation codes

CHAPTER 7

SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners

TEST UNIT READY (\$00)

The TEST UNIT READY command provides a means for the host computer to check whether the scanner is ready for normal operation. If the scanner is in a ready condition, the command reports a GOOD status. If the scanner is not ready, the command sets the SCSI sense data to the cause of the error, and the command is terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status. To retrieve the sense data, issue the REQUEST SENSE command (described later in this chapter). Figure 7-1 shows the format of the TEST UNIT READY command structure.

This command is not a request for self-testing. For more information about internal scanner tests, see "SEND DIAGNOSTIC (\$1D)," later in this chapter.

| | | | | Bit nu | mber | | | |
|---|---|-----------------------|-----------------------|--|--|---|---|--|
| | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | | | (\$00) | Oper | ation co | de | | |
| 1 | (\$00) Reserved (\$00) Reserved (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | (\$00) | Rese | rved | | | |
| 5 | | | (\$00) | Rese | rved | | | |
| | 1 2 3 4 | 0 1 2 3 4 | 0 1 2 3 4 | 0 (\$00) 1 (\$00) 2 (\$00) 3 (\$00) 4 (\$00) | 7 6 5 4 0 (\$00) Operation 1 (\$00) Reservation 2 (\$00) Reservation 3 (\$00) Reservation 4 (\$00) Reservation | 0 (\$00) Operation cont 1 (\$00) Reserved 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved | 7 6 5 4 3 2 0 (\$00) Operation code 1 (\$00) Reserved 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 (\$00) Operation code (\$00) Image: Comparison code 1 (\$00) Reserved Image: Comparison code 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved |

Figure 7-1 The TEST UNIT READY command structure

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the TEST UNIT READY command is \$00.

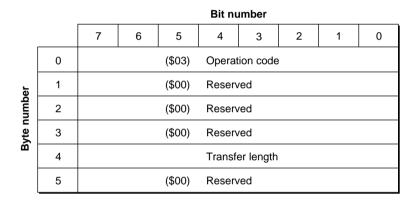
Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

REQUEST SENSE (\$03)

The REQUEST SENSE command instructs the scanner to return error and status information. The SCSI sense data is valid after any operation that returns a CHECK CONDITION status. If another operation returns a CHECK CONDITION status before your program retrieves the current sense data, the scanner overwrites the old sense data with the new data.

Figure 7-2 shows the format of the REQUEST SENSE command. The returned information is sent to the host computer in a return structure appropriate to the type of attached scanner. The return structures for the Apple Scanner, OneScanner, and Color OneScanner are described later in this section.

Figure 7-2 The REQUEST SENSE command structure



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the REQUEST SENSE command is \$03.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

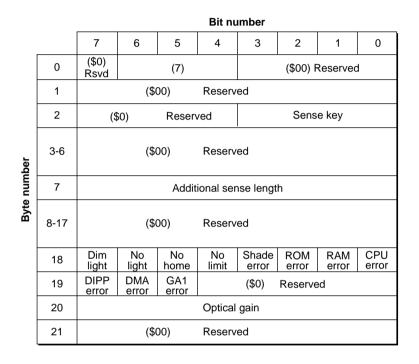
Transfer length

This field indicates the number of bytes of REQUEST SENSE data to be returned by the scanner. A value of 0 in this field indicates that no data is to be returned (this is not an error). Any other value indicates the maximum number of sense bytes to be returned. The scanner stops transferring data when it has returned the number of bytes specified by the Transfer length field, or when all available REQUEST SENSE data has been returned, whichever comes first.

REQUEST SENSE Return Structure Description for the Apple Scanner

The REQUEST SENSE command returns a structure containing the requested information. Figure 7-3 shows the format of the return structure for the Apple Scanner.

Figure 7-3 The REQUEST SENSE return structure for the Apple Scanner



Here is a list of the fields and bits defined in this return structure:

ReservedThese fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.Sense keyBits 0–3 of byte 2 contain the *Sense key*. The possible Sense key values
are as follows:

- \$0 No sense information: there is no specific sense data to be returned to the host computer. This situation occurs after a command executes successfully.
- \$2 Not ready: the scanner cannot scan without some user intervention.
- \$4 Hardware error: the scanner detects a nonrecoverable hardware fault while executing a command or during a self-test; these errors are indicated by the setting of the hardware error flags in bytes 18 and 19 of the return data block.
- \$5 Illegal request: the scanner detects an illegal parameter in the command block; the scanner cannot perform a scan and cannot alter any parameter data within the scanner.

- \$6 Unit attention: the scanner has just been switched on or reset and cannot execute any command except REQUEST SENSE or INQUIRY.
- \$9 Vendor unique: the scanner detects a vendor unique error, which is identified by the setting of the Vendor unique error flags in byte 18 of the return data block.

Additional sense length

This field indicates the number of sense data bytes that follow. The value of this field does not include bytes 0–7 of the return structure. It reflects the maximum size possible for a returned structure. The scanner does not adjust the value of this field to accommodate the Transfer length parameter specified in your REQUEST SENSE command.

Hardware error flags

Bytes 18 and 19 in the return structure contain bit flags that indicate the specific nature of a hardware error. Flags that are set to 1 indicate a specific hardware error condition. If the returned Sense key field is set to \$4, then one or more of these bits are set to 1.

| No light | No light is detected from the fluorescent lamp. |
|------------|--|
| No limit | The scanner was unable to locate the limit switch position. Scanning cannot proceed because physical damage to the device may occur. |
| ROM error | A fatal hardware error has been detected in the ROM (an erroneous checksum). |
| RAM error | A fatal hardware error has been detected in the RAM. |
| CPU error | A fatal hardware error has been detected in the CPU. |
| DIPP error | A fatal hardware error has been detected in the document image preprocessor (DIPP) IC. |
| DMA error | A fatal hardware error has been detected in the direct memory access (DMA) IC. |
| GA1 error | A fatal hardware error has been detected in the Gate Array 1 (GA1) IC. |

Vendor unique error flags

Byte 18 in the return structure contains bit flags that indicate the specific nature of a vendor unique error. Flags that are set to 1 indicate a specific error condition. If the returned Sense key field is set to \$9, then one or more of these bits is set to 1.

Dim light The fluorescent lamp is functioning, but its output has dropped below 70 percent and is too low for a scan to be accurate.No home The scanner was unable to locate the home position mark. Scanning may proceed, but the document may not be scanned properly.

| | Shade error | Three unsuccessful attempts were made to calibrate the charge-coupled device (CCD) array correctly. Scanning may continue, but the results may be poor. The cause may be a dim lamp or a component that needs servicing. |
|--------------|-----------------|--|
| Optical gain | the optical sys | relative intensity of the lamp by returning the gain by which stem must boost the analog amplifier to give correct shading condition is not an error and does not set the Sense key). |

REQUEST SENSE Return Structure Description for the OneScanner

The REQUEST SENSE command returns a structure containing the requested information. Figure 7-4 shows the format of the return structure for the OneScanner.

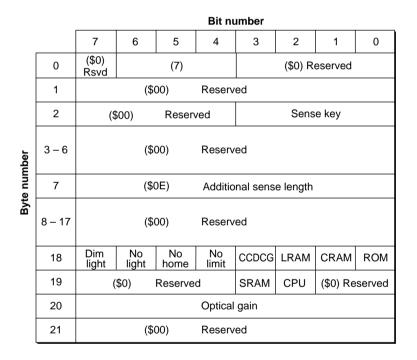


 Figure 7-4
 The REQUEST SENSE return structure for the OneScanner

Here is a list of the fields and bits defined in this return structure:

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Sense key Bits 0–3 of byte 2 contain the Sense key. The possible Sense key values are as follows:

- \$0 No sense information: there is no specific sense information to be returned to the host computer. This situation occurs after a command has been executed successfully.
- \$2 Not ready: the scanner cannot scan without some user intervention.

- \$4 Hardware error: the scanner detects a nonrecoverable hardware fault while executing a command or during a self-test; these errors are indicated by the setting of the hardware error flags in bytes 18 and 19 of the return data block.
- \$5 Illegal request: the scanner detects an illegal parameter in the command block; the scanner cannot perform a scan and cannot alter any parameter data within the scanner.
- \$6 Unit attention: the scanner has just been switched on or reset and cannot execute any command except REQUEST SENSE or INQUIRY.
- \$9 Vendor unique: the scanner detects a vendor unique error, which is identified by the setting of the vendor unique error flag in byte 18 of the return data block.

Additional sense length

The value in this field indicates the number of sense data bytes that follow. The value does not include bytes 0–7 of the return structure. It reflects the maximum size possible for a returned structure. The scanner does not adjust the value of this field to accommodate the Transfer length parameter specified in your REQUEST SENSE command.

Hardware error flags

Bytes 18 and 19 in the return structure contain bit flags that indicate the specific nature of a hardware error. Flags that are set to 1 indicate a specific hardware error condition. If the returned Sense key field is set to \$4, then one or more of these bits are set to 1.

| No light | No light is detected from the fluorescent lamp. |
|----------|--|
| No home | The scanner was unable to locate the home position mark. Scanning may proceed, but the document may not be scanned properly. |
| No limit | The scanner was unable to locate the limit switch position. Scanning cannot proceed because physical damage to the device may occur. |
| CCDCG | CCD clock generator is not functioning properly. Unit should be repaired. |
| LRAM | Line RAM has one or more bad bits. Unit should be repaired. |
| CRAM | Correction RAM has one or more bad bits. Unit should be repaired. |
| ROM | Bad checksum in the control ROM. Unit should be repaired. |
| SRAM | General-purpose RAM for the scanner CPU has one or more bad bits. Unit should be repaired. |
| CPU | CPU is not functioning properly. Unit should be repaired. |

Vendor unique error flag

Bit 7 of byte 18 in the return structure contains a bit flag that indicates the specific nature of a vendor unique error, in this case, Dim light. If the flag is set, it indicates the specific error condition.

- Dim light The fluorescent lamp is functioning, but its output has dropped below 70 percent and is too low for a scan to be accurate.
- Optical gain Indicates the relative intensity of the lamp by returning the gain by which the optical system must boost the analog amplifier to give correct shading results. (This condition is not an error and does not set the Sense key).

REQUEST SENSE Return Structure Description for the Color OneScanner

The REQUEST SENSE command returns a structure containing the requested information. Figure 7-5 shows the format of the return structure for the Color OneScanner.

| | | | | | Bit nu | ımber | | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|-------------|------------|--------------|-------------------------|-------|---------------|------|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| | 0 | (\$0) Rsvd | (\$70 |) Curren | t error | t error (\$00) Reserved | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$0 | 00) | Reserv | rved | | | |
| | 2 (\$0) Reserved Sense key | | | | | e key | | | |
| Byte number | 3 – 6 | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 (\$0E) Additional sense length | | | | | | | | | |
| Byt | 8 – 17 | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | |
| | 18 | Dim light | No light | No home | No limit | Cal Ckt | PSRAM | SRAM | ROM |
| | 19 | Rsvd | Rsvd | Rsvd | ICP | Rsvd | Rsvd | Over light | Rsvd |
| 20 Op | | | | | Optical gain | | | | |
| | 21 (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | |

Here is a list of the fields and bits defined in this return structure:

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0. Current error

This field indicates a current scanner error.

Sense key Bits 0–3 of byte 2 contain the Sense key. The possible Sense key values are as follows:

- \$0 No sense information: there is no specific sense information to be returned to the host computer. This situation occurs after a command has been executed successfully.
- \$2 Not ready: the scanner cannot perform a scan because it is already busy scanning or because there is a problem not covered by the other Sense keys. The operator may have to intervene to correct the problem.
- \$4 Hardware error: the scanner detects a nonrecoverable hardware fault while executing a command or during a self-test; these errors are indicated by the setting of the hardware error flags in bytes 18 and 19 of the return data block.
- \$5 Illegal request: the scanner detects an illegal parameter in the command block; the scanner cannot perform a scan and cannot alter any parameter data within the scanner.
- \$6 Unit attention: the scanner has just been switched on or reset and cannot execute any command except REQUEST SENSE or INQUIRY.
- \$9 Vendor unique: the scanner detects a vendor-unique error, which is identified by the setting of the vendor unique error flags in bytes 18 and 19 of the return data block.

Additional sense length

This field indicates the number of sense data bytes that follow. The value of this field does not include bytes 0–7 of the return structure. It reflects the maximum size possible for a returned structure. The scanner does not adjust the value of this field to accommodate the Transfer length parameter specified in the REQUEST SENSE command.

Hardware error flags

Bytes 18 and 19 in the return structure contain bit flags that indicate the specific nature of a hardware error. Flags that are set to 1 indicate a specific hardware error condition. If the returned Sense key field is set to \$4, then one or more of these bits are set to 1.

| No light | No light is detected from the fluorescent lamp. |
|----------|--|
| No limit | The scanner was unable to locate the limit switch position. Scanning cannot proceed because physical damage to the device may occur. |
| Cal Ckt | The calibration circuit cannot support normal shading correction. Scanning should not proceed. |
| PSRAM | The correction RAM has one or more bad bits. Scanning should not proceed. |
| SRAM | General-purpose RAM for the scanner CPU has one or more bad bits. Unit should be repaired. |
| ROM | Bad checksum in the control ROM. Unit should be repaired. |

ICP The ICP (image correction processor) is not functioning properly after a read/write test of the ICP registers. Sense key \$4 should be set when the ICP error bit is set to 1. Scanning should not proceed.

Vendor-unique error flags

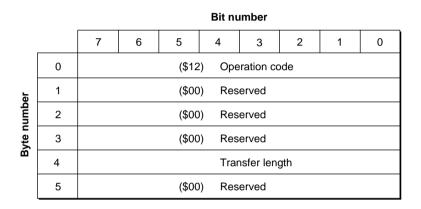
Bytes 18 and 19 in the return structure contain bit flags that indicate the specific nature of a vendor unique error. Flags that are set to 1 indicate a specific error condition. If the returned Sense key field is set to \$9, then one or more of these bits are set to 1.

| Dim light | | The fluorescent lamp is functioning, but its output has dropped below 70 percent and is too low for a scan to be accurate. |
|--------------|-----------------|---|
| | | Lamp needs replacing. |
| | | The white target underneath the scanning bed is dirty. (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | The three mirrors are dirty. (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | The aperture plate is dirty. (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | The CCD is dirty or bad. (Color OneScanner only) |
| | | Scanning may continue, but results may not be satisfactory. |
| | No home | The scanner was unable to locate the home position mark. Scanning may proceed, but the document may not be scanned properly. |
| | Over light | The fluorescent lamp is too bright for normal scanning. Scanning can proceed, but the document may not be scanned properly. |
| Optical gain | the optical sys | relative intensity of the lamp by returning the gain by which stem must boost the analog amplifier to give correct shading condition is not an error and does not set the Sense key.) |

INQUIRY (\$12)

The INQUIRY command returns information about the scanner's device type, firmware version, conformance to various industry standards, and support for the SCSI command set. Figure 7-6 shows the format of the INQUIRY command structure. The scanner returns the requested information in a return structure appropriate to the scanner type. These return structures are described later in this section.

Figure 7-6 The INQUIRY command structure



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the INQUIRY command is \$12.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

This field indicates the number of bytes of INQUIRY data to be returned by the scanner. A value of 0 in the transfer length field indicates that no data is to be returned (this is not an error). Any other value indicates the maximum number of data bytes to be returned. The scanner stops transferring data when it has returned the number of bytes specified by the Transfer length field, or all available INQUIRY data, whichever comes first.

INQUIRY Return Structure Description for the Apple Scanner

The INQUIRY return structure for the Apple Scanner contains a 5-byte header followed by 44 bytes of additional inquiry information, as shown in Figure 7-7.

| Figure 7-7 The INQUIRY return structure for the Apple Scanner |
|---|
|---|

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---------|------------------------|----|---|----------------------|----|---|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | (\$06 | 6) | Device type | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | (\$00 | D) | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | | | Version | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | (\$00 | D) | Reserve | Response data format | | | | | | |
| | 4 | (\$20 | C) | Additional length | | | | | | | |
| | 5 – 7 | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| | 8 – 15 | Vendor identification | | | | | | | | | |
| er | 16 – 31 | Product identification | | | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 32 – 35 | Revision level | | | | | | | | | |
| ۵. | 36 | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| | 37 | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| | 38 | (\$00 | D) | Group 0 commands opcode | | | | | | | |
| | 39 | (\$90 |)) | Enabled opcodes: \$00, \$03 | | | | | | | |
| | 40 | (\$00 | D) | Enabled opcodes: none | | | | | | | |
| | 41 | (\$27 | 7) | Enabled opcodes: \$12, \$15, \$16, \$17 | | | | | | | |
| | 42 | (\$34 | 4) | Enabled opcodes: \$1A, \$1B, \$1D | | | | | | | |
| | 43 | (\$01 | 1) | Group 1 commands opcode | | | | | | | |
| | 44 | (\$08 | 3) | Enabled opcodes: \$24 | | | | | | | |
| | 45 | (\$A0 |) | Enabled opcodes: \$28, \$2A | | | | | | | |
| | 46 | (\$08 | 3) | Enabled opcodes: \$34 | | | | | | | |
| | 47 | (\$00 |) | Enabled opcodes: none | | | | | | | |
| | 48 | (\$FF | =) | Er | nd of blo | ck | | | | | |

Here is a list of the fields defined in this return structure:

| Device type | This field contains the SCSI standard device code of the scanner, which |
|-------------|---|
| | is \$06. |

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Version This field indicates the version number of this scanner, which is \$02, as specified in the ANSI SCSI-2 (X3T9.2/86-109) device interface specification.

Response data format

This field indicates that the inquiry data format is as specified in the ANSI SCSI-2 (X3T9.2/86-109) specification. This field is \$02 for the Apple Scanner.

Additional length

This field indicates the number of data bytes that follow. The value of this field is \$2C and does not include bytes 0–4 of the return structure. The scanner does not adjust the value of this field to accommodate the Transfer length field specified in your INQUIRY command.

Vendor identification

This field contains an ASCII string that identifies the scanner's vendor. For the Apple Scanner, this string is "APPLE", followed by three spaces.

Product identification

This field contains an ASCII string identifying the scanner's product name and a model number. For the Apple Scanner, this string is "SCANNER A9M0337", followed by one space.

Revision level

This field contains an ASCII string that identifies the scanner's firmware revision level. For the Apple Scanner, this string is "0.00".

Group 0 commands opcode

A value of 0 in this field indicates that at least one of the Group 0 scanning command operation codes (as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification) is supported. Bytes 39–42 contain bit flags indicating the Group 0 commands supported by the Apple Scanner. Each command has a corresponding bit in the appropriate bit flag. That bit is set to 1 if the scanner supports the command, and it is set to 0 if the scanner does not support the command.

Enabled opcodes (\$00 through \$07)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$00 to \$07 that the Apple Scanner supports. The Apple Scanner supports commands \$00 (TEST UNIT READY) and \$03 (INQUIRY). Therefore, bits 7 and 4 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$90.

Enabled opcodes (\$08 through \$0F)

None of these operations is supported; all bits are set to 0.

Enabled opcodes (\$10 through \$17)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$10 to \$17 that the Apple Scanner supports. The Apple Scanner supports commands \$12 (INQUIRY), \$15 (MODE SELECT), \$16 (RESERVE), and \$17 (RELEASE). Therefore, bits 5, 2, 1, and 0 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$27.

Enabled opcodes (\$18 through \$1F)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$18 to \$1F that the Apple Scanner supports. The Apple Scanner supports commands \$1A (MODE SENSE), \$1B (SCAN), and \$1D (SEND DIAGNOSTIC). Therefore, bits 5, 4, and 2 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$34.

Group 1 commands

A value of 1 in this field indicates that at least one of the Group 1 scanning commands (as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification) is supported. Bytes 44–47 contain bit flags indicating the Group 1 commands supported by the Apple Scanner. Each command has a corresponding bit in the appropriate bit flag. That bit is set to 1 if the scanner supports the command, and it is set to 0 if the scanner does not support the command.

Enabled opcodes (\$20 through \$27)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$20 to \$27 that the Apple Scanner supports. The Apple Scanner supports command \$24 (DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS). Therefore, bit 3 is set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$08.

Enabled opcodes (\$28 through \$2F)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$28 to \$2F that the Apple Scanner supports. The Apple Scanner supports commands \$28 (READ) and \$2A (SEND). Therefore, bits 7 and 5 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$A0.

Enabled opcodes (\$30 through \$37)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$30 to \$37 that the Apple Scanner supports. The Apple Scanner supports command \$34 (GET DATA STATUS). Therefore, bit 3 is set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$08.

Enabled opcodes (\$38 through \$3F)

None of these operation codes is supported; all bits are set to 0.

End of block A value of \$FF in this field is used to indicate the end of the block.

INQUIRY Return Structure Description for the OneScanner

The INQUIRY return structure for the OneScanner contains a 5-byte header followed by 44 bytes of additional inquiry information, as shown in Figure 7-8.

Here is a list of the fields defined in this return structure:

\$00; the value of byte 37 is \$20.

| There is a list o | ine neus denned in this return structure. | | | | | |
|-------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Device type | This field contains the SCSI standard device code of the scanner, which is \$06. | | | | | |
| Reserved | These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0. | | | | | |
| Version | This field indicates the version number of this scanner, which is \$02, as specified in the ANSI SCSI-2 (X3T9.2/86-109) device interface specification. | | | | | |
| Response data | a format | | | | | |
| | This field indicates that the inquiry data format is as specified in the ANSI SCSI-2 (X3T9.2/86-109) specification. This field is \$02 for the OneScanner. | | | | | |
| Additional ler | ngth | | | | | |
| | This field indicates the number of data bytes that follow. The value of this field is \$2C and does not include bytes 0–4 of the return structure. The scanner does not adjust the value of this field to accommodate the Transfer length specified in your INQUIRY command. | | | | | |
| ROM size | This field indicates the size, in kilobytes, of the scanner ROM. The value of this field is \$20. | | | | | |
| CRAM size | This field indicates the size, in kilobytes, of the correction RAM. The value of this field is \$04. | | | | | |
| SRAM size | This field indicates the size, in kilobytes, of the general storage RAM for the scanner CPU. The value of this field is \$08. | | | | | |
| Vendor identi | fication | | | | | |
| | This field contains an ASCII string that identifies the scanner's vendor. For the OneScanner, this string is "APPLE", followed by three spaces. | | | | | |
| Product ident | ification | | | | | |
| | This field contains an ASCII string identifying the scanner's product name and a model number. For the OneScanner, this string is "SCANNER II", followed by six spaces. | | | | | |
| Revision level | | | | | | |
| | This field contains an ASCII string that identifies the scanner's firmware revision level. For the OneScanner, this string is "2.02". | | | | | |
| Buffer space | Bytes 36 and 37 indicate the total amount of buffer memory, in kilobytes, in the attached scanner. Buffer memory is used to store scan image data until the host computer reads the data from the scanner. Together, these two bytes contain a 16-bit value: byte 36 contains the most significant byte; byte 37 contains the least significant byte. The value of byte 36 is \$00; the value of byte 37 is \$20 | | | | | |

126

Figure 7-8

The INQUIRY return structure for the OneScanner

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---------|------------|-----------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-------|--|--|--|
| | | 7 | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | (\$06 | 6) | De | vice type |) | | | | | | |
| | 1 | (\$00 |)) | Re | served | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | (\$02 | 2) | Ve | rsion | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | (\$00 |)) | Reserve | d | (\$2) | Respons | e data fo | ormat | | | |
| | 4 | (\$20 | ;) | Ad | ditional l | ength | | | | | | |
| | 5 | (\$20 |)) | RC | M size | | | | | | | |
| | 6 | (\$04 | 4) | CR | AM size | | | | | | | |
| | 7 | (\$08 | 3) | SR | AM size | | | | | | | |
| | 8 – 15 | | Vendor identification | | | | | | | | | |
| er | 16 – 31 | | | Pro | oduct identification | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 32 – 35 | | | Re | Revision level | | | | | | | |
| Ð, | 36 | (\$00 |)) | Bu | Buffer space (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| | 37 | (\$20 |)) | Bu | ffer spac | e (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | 38 | (\$00 |)) | Gr | oup 0 co | mmands | opcode | | | | | |
| | 39 | (\$90 |)) | En | abled op | codes: \$ | 600, \$03 | | | | | |
| | 40 | (\$00 |)) | En | abled op | codes: r | none | | | | | |
| | 41 | (\$27 | 7) | En | abled op | codes: \$ | 612, \$15, | \$16, \$1 | 7 | | | |
| | 42 | (\$34 | 4) | En | Enabled opcodes: \$1A, \$1B, \$1D | | | | | | | |
| | 43 | (\$01 |) | Gr | Group 1 commands opcode | | | | | | | |
| | 44 | (\$08 | 3) | Er | Enabled opcodes: \$24 | | | | | | | |
| | 45 | (\$A0 |)) | Er | Enabled opcodes: \$28, \$2A | | | | | | | |
| | 46 | (\$48 | 3) | Er | abled op | codes: | \$31, \$34 | | | | | |
| | 47 | (\$00 |)) | Er | abled op | codes: I | none | | | | | |
| | 48 | (\$FF | -) | Er | nd of bloo | k | | | | | | |

Group 0 commands opcode

A value of 0 in this field indicates that at least one of the Group 0 scanning command operation codes (as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification) is supported. Bytes 39–42 contain bit flags indicating the Group 0 commands supported by the OneScanner. Each command has a corresponding bit in the appropriate bit flag. That bit is set to 1 if the OneScanner supports the command, and it is set to 0 if the OneScanner does not support the command.

Enabled opcodes (\$00 through \$07)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$00 to \$07 that the OneScanner supports. The OneScanner supports commands \$00 (TEST UNIT READY) and \$03 (REQUEST SENSE). Therefore, bits 7 and 4 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$90.

Enabled opcodes (\$08 through \$0F)

None of these operations is supported; all bits are set to 0.

Enabled opcodes (\$10 through \$17)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$10 to \$17 that the OneScanner supports. The OneScanner supports commands \$12 (INQUIRY), \$15 (MODE SELECT), \$16 (RESERVE), and \$17 (RELEASE). Therefore, bits 5, 2, 1, and 0 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$27.

Enabled opcodes (\$18 through \$1F)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$18 to \$1F that the OneScanner supports. The OneScanner supports commands \$1A (MODE SENSE), \$1B (SCAN), and \$1D (SEND DIAGNOSTIC). Therefore, bits 5, 4, and 2 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$34.

Group 1 commands

A value of 1 in this field indicates that at least one of the Group 1 scanning commands (as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification) is supported. Bytes 44–47 contain bit flags indicating the Group 1 commands supported by the OneScanner. Each command has a corresponding bit in the appropriate bit flag. That bit is set to 1 if the OneScanner supports the command, and it is set to 0 if the OneScanner does not support the command.

Enabled opcodes (\$20 through \$27)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$20 to \$27 that the OneScanner supports. The OneScanner supports command \$24 (DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS). Therefore, bit 3 is set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$08.

Enabled opcodes (\$28 through \$2F)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$28 to \$2F that the OneScanner supports. The OneScanner supports commands \$28 (READ) and \$2A (SEND). Therefore, bits 7 and 5 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$A0.

Enabled opcodes (\$30 through \$37)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$30 to \$37 that the OneScanner supports. The OneScanner supports commands \$31 (OBJECT POSITION) and \$34 (GET DATA STATUS). Therefore, bits 6 and 3 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$48.

Enabled opcodes (\$38 through \$3F)

None of these operations is supported; all bits are set to 0.

End of block A value of \$FF in this field is used to indicate the end of the block.

INQUIRY Return Structure Description for the Color OneScanner

The INQUIRY return structure for the Color OneScanner contains a 5-byte header followed by 48 bytes of additional inquiry information, as shown in Figure 7-9 on page 130.

Here is a list of the fields defined in this return structure:

| i leie is a list e | in the netus defined in this retain structure. |
|--------------------|--|
| Device type | This field contains the SCSI standard device code of the scanner, which is \$06. |
| Reserved | These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0. |
| Version | This field indicates the version number of this scanner, which is \$02, as specified in the ANSI SCSI-2 (X3T9.2/86-109) device interface specification. |
| Response data | a format |
| - | This field indicates that the inquiry data format is as specified in the ANSI SCSI-2 (X3T9.2/86-109) specification. The value of this field is \$02 for the Color OneScanner. |
| Additional ler | ngth |
| | This field indicates the number of data bytes that follow. The value of this field is \$30 and does not include bytes 0–4 of the return structure. The scanner does not adjust the value of this field to accommodate the Transfer length specified in your INQUIRY command. |
| Vendor identi | fication |
| | This field contains an ASCII string that identifies the scanner's vendor. For the Color OneScanner, this string is "APPLE", followed by three spaces. |
| Product ident | ification |
| | This field contains an ASCII string identifying the scanner's product name and a model number. For the Color OneScanner, this string is "SCANNER III", followed by five spaces. |

Revision level

This field contains an ASCII string that identifies the scanner's firmware revision level. For the Color OneScanner, this string is "3.00".

Figure 7-9

The INQUIRY return structure for the Color OneScanner

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------|------------------------|-------------|-------------|---|--------------------------|-------------|------------|-------|--|--|--|
| | | 7 | 7 6 5 4 3 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | (\$06 | 6) | Device type | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | (\$02 | 2) | Version | | | | | | | | |
| | 3 | (\$00 |)) | Reserve | d | (\$2) | Respons | se data fo | ormat | | | |
| | 4 | (\$30 |)) | Ad | ditional I | ength | | | | | | |
| | 5-7 | (\$00 |)) | Re | served | | | | | | | |
| | 8-15 | Vendor identification | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 16-31 | Product identification | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 32-35 | | | Re | vision le | vel | | | | | | |
| er | 36 | (\$00 |)) | Bu | ffer space | e (MSB) | | | | | | |
| | 37 | (\$80 |)) | Bu | ffer spac | ce (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | 38 | (\$00 |)) | Gr | Group 0 commands | | | | | | | |
| nmbe | 39 | (\$90 |)) | En | 600, \$03 | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 40 | (\$00 |)) | En | abled op | codes: n | codes: none | | | | | |
| Ð. | 41 | (\$27 | ") | En | Enabled opcodes: \$12, \$15, \$16, \$17 | | | | | | | |
| | 42 | (\$34 | l) | En | abled op | codes: \$ | 51A, \$1B | s, \$1D | | | | |
| | 43 | (\$01 |) | Gr | oup 1 co | ommands | s opcode | 9 | | | | |
| | 44 | (\$0C | ;) | Er | nabled o | codes: S | \$24, \$25 | ; | | | | |
| | 45 | (\$A0 |)) | Er | nabled op | bled opcodes: \$28, \$2A | | | | | | |
| | 46 | (\$48 | 3) | Er | Enabled opcodes: \$31, \$34 | | | | | | | |
| | 47 | (\$00 |)) | Er | nabled o | codes: r | none | | | | | |
| | 48 | (\$FF | -) | Er | End of block | | | | | | | |
| | 49 | (\$40 |)) | R | ROM size | | | | | | | |
| | 50 | (\$01 |) | PS | SRAM si | ze (MSB) |) | | | | | |
| | 51 | (\$00 |)) | PS | SRAM si | ze (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | 52 | (\$08 | 3) | SF | RAM size | 9 | | | | | | |

- ROM size This field indicates the size, in kilobytes, of the scanner ROM. The value of this field is \$40, equivalent to 64K decimal.
- SRAM size This field indicates the size, in kilobytes, of the general storage RAM for the scanner CPU. The value of this field is \$08.
- PSRAM size This field is a two-byte field that indicates the size, in kilobytes, of the correction RAM. It contains \$01 and \$00, which are equivalent to 256K decimal.
- Buffer space Bytes 36 and 37 indicate the total amount of buffer memory, in kilobytes, in the attached scanner. Buffer memory is used to store scan image data until the host computer reads the data from the scanner. Together, these two bytes contain a 16-bit value: byte 36 contains the most significant byte; byte 37 contains the least significant byte. The value of byte 36 is \$00; the value of byte 37 is \$80.

Group 0 commands opcode

A 0 in this field indicates that at least one of the Group 0 scanning command operation codes (as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification) is supported. Bytes 39–52 contain bit flags indicating the Group 0 commands supported by the Color OneScanner. Each command has a corresponding bit in the appropriate bit flag. That bit is set to 1 if the Color OneScanner supports the command, and it is set to 0 if the Color OneScanner does not support the command.

Enabled opcodes (\$00 through \$07)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$00 to \$07 that the Color OneScanner supports. The Color OneScanner supports commands \$00 (TEST UNIT READY) and \$03 (INQUIRY). Therefore, bits 7 and 4 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$90.

Enabled opcodes (\$08 through \$0F)

None of these operation codes is supported; all bits are set to 0.

Enabled opcodes (\$10 through \$17)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$10 to \$17 that the Color OneScanner supports. The Color OneScanner supports commands \$12 (INQUIRY), \$15 (MODE SELECT), \$16 (RESERVE), and \$17 (RELEASE). Therefore, bits 5, 2, 1, and 0 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$27.

Enabled opcodes (\$18 through \$1F)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$18 to \$1F that the Color OneScanner supports. The Color OneScanner supports commands \$1A (MODE SENSE), \$1B (SCAN), and \$1D (SEND DIAGNOSTIC). Therefore, bits 5, 4, and 2 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$34.

Group 1 commands

A value of 1 in this field indicates that at least one of the Group 1 scanning commands (as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification) is supported. Bytes 44–47 contain bit flags indicating the Group 1 commands supported by the Color OneScanner. Each command has a corresponding bit in the appropriate bit flag. That bit is set to 1 if the Color OneScanner supports the command, and it is set to 0 if the Color OneScanner does not support the command.

Enabled opcodes (\$20 through \$27)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$20 to \$27 that the Color OneScanner supports. The Color OneScanner supports commands \$24 (DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS) and \$25 (GET WINDOW PARAMETERS). Therefore, bits 2 and 3 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$0C.

Enabled opcodes (\$28 through \$2F)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$28 to \$2F that the Color OneScanner supports. The Color OneScanner supports commands \$28 (READ) and \$2A (SEND). Therefore, bits 7 and 5 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$A0.

Enabled opcodes (\$30 through \$37)

These bit flags indicate the SCSI commands from \$30 to \$37 that the Color OneScanner supports. The Color OneScanner supports commands \$31 (OBJECT POSITION) and \$34 (GET DATA STATUS). Therefore, bits 6 and 3 are set to 1. All other bits are set to 0. The value of the field is \$48.

Enabled opcodes (\$38 through \$3F)

None of these operation codes is supported; all bits are set to 0.

End of block A value of \$FF in this field is used to indicate the end of the block.

MODE SELECT (\$15)

The MODE SELECT command passes a parameter block to the scanner. The scanner uses this data to configure its operating parameters. Figure 7-10 shows the format of the MODE SELECT command structure. The information is passed to the scanner in a MODE SELECT parameter list that is appropriate to the parameter type and attached scanner. These parameter lists are described later in this section.

| | | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|--------|------------|--------|-----------------------|-------|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | (\$15) | Operation code | | | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 1 | (\$00) | Rese | erved | Page (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| | 2 | | | (\$00) | Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| yte n | 3 | | | (\$00) | Rese | erved | | | | | | | | |
| By | 4 | | | | Parameter list length | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | | (\$00) | Reserved | | | | | | | | | |

Figure 7-10 The MODE SELECT command structure

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for this command is \$15.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Page format The Page format bit indicates that all parameters after the block descriptors are unique to the vendor, as specified in this reference. This bit must always be set to 1.

Parameter list length

This field contains the length, in bytes, of the parameter list to be passed to the scanner. A transfer length of 0 indicates that no parameter list is being passed (this is not an error condition).

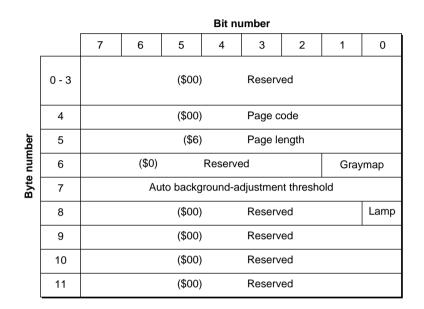
MODE SELECT Parameter List Description

The MODE SELECT parameter list contains one or more optional parameter pages. The parameter page may be either an Apple-specific parameter page or a disconnectreconnect parameter page. Each parameter page includes 2 bytes that specify the type and the length of the data page. The data pages are described next.

Apple-Specific Parameter Page Description for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-11 shows the Apple-specific parameter page for the Apple Scanner.

Figure 7-11 The MODE SELECT Apple-specific parameter page for the Apple Scanner



Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this page:

| | 1 8 |
|---------------|--|
| Reserved | These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0. |
| Page code | This field identifies the page type. Set them to 0. |
| Page length | This field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the parameter page, not including bytes 0–5. Set this field to 6. |
| Graymap | This field contains the value that controls the graymap function of the scanner. The graymap function allows the scanner to enhance detail in light areas or dark areas of a document, or not to enhance either. A value of 0 results in more detail in the darker areas of the document. A value of 1 results in no alteration of the data. A value of 2 results in more detail in the lighter areas of the document. |
| Auto backgrou | und-adjustment threshold This field specifies the threshold level at which the scanner determines whether a dot is black or white when the user selects automatic back- ground adjustment. The default threshold level is 64. |
| | When excessively dark areas of an original document are scanned, automatic background adjustment constantly adjusts the brightness level, resulting in more detail in the darker areas. Light areas are left unaltered. |

| | To select automatic background adjustment, set the Threshold parameter to 0 in the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command parameter list. See "DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$24)," later in this chapter. |
|------|---|
| Lamp | This bit controls the fluorescent lamp used to illuminate the document during scanning. A value of 1 turns on the lamp. A value of 0 turns it off. |
| | In addition, other conditions may affect whether the lamp is on or off. Once the lamp is turned on, it remains on until two minutes elapse without SCSI activity. The next SCSI command turns on the lamp for a minimum period of two minutes. Furthermore, if the No home bit is set to 1 in the SCAN command, the scanner turns off the lamp only after the carriage assembly returns to the home position. See "SCAN (\$1B)," later in this chapter. |

Apple-Specific Parameter Page Description for the OneScanner

Figure 7-12 shows the Apple-specific parameter page for the OneScanner.

Figure 7-12 The MODE SELECT Apple-specific parameter page for the OneScanner

| | Bit number | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|----------------------------------|---|---|--|--|---|---|--------|--|--|--|
| | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | |
| 0 - 3 | | | (\$00) |) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | (\$00) | (\$00) | | Page code | | | | | |
| 5 | | | (\$06) | | Page length | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | (\$00) | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| 7 | (\$ | 0) | Rese | Reserved | | LED | Reset | Button | | | |
| 8 | (\$ | 0) | Rese | Reserved | | Fast L | CCD | Lamp | | | |
| 9 | | (\$00 | | | Reserved | | | | | | |
| 10 | | (1 | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| 11 | | | (\$00) |) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 | 0 - 3 4 5 6 7 (\$ 8 (\$ 9 10 | 0 - 3 4 5 6 7 (\$0) 8 (\$0) 9 10 | 0 - 3 (\$00) 4 (\$00) 5 (\$00) 6 (\$00) 7 (\$0) 8 (\$0) 9 (\$00) 10 (\$00) | 7 6 5 4 $0 - 3$ (\$00) (\$00) 4 (\$00) 5 (\$00) 6 (\$00) 7 (\$00) 8 (\$0) 9 (\$00) 10 (\$00) | 7 6 5 4 3 $0 - 3$ <td>$\begin{array}{c c c c c c c }\hline 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\ \hline 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\ \hline 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\ \hline 0 - 3 & & & & & & \\ \hline 4 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 4 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 4 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & &$</td> <td></td> | $\begin{array}{c c c c c c c }\hline 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\ \hline 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\ \hline 7 & 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 \\ \hline 0 - 3 & & & & & & \\ \hline 4 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 4 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 4 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & & \\ \hline 5 & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 6 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & & \\ \hline 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & & \\ 7 & & & &$ | | | | |

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this page:

- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- Page code This field identifies the page type. Set it to 0.
- Page length This field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the parameter page, not including bytes 0–5. Set it to \$06.

| LED | This bit controls the setting of the amber LED on the OneScanner. A value of 1 turns on the LED. A value of 0 turns it off. | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|--|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Reset | | | er the scanner should reset the Button bit. A value to set the Button bit to 0. A value of 0 has no effect. | | | | | | |
| Button | the last reset set to 1). A v of 0 indicate | t request (a l alue of 1 inc s that the bu | rrent state of the button on the OneScanner since MODE SELECT command with the Reset bit dicates that the button has been pressed. A value atton has not been pressed. Applies only to sion 2.03, or earlier. | | | | | | |
| Fast H, Fast L | Together, the three possible | | rmine the scan speed for the scanner. Here are the r these bits: | | | | | | |
| | Fast H | Fast L | Scan speed | | | | | | |
| | 0 | 0 | Normal speed | | | | | | |
| | 0 | 1 | High speed | | | | | | |
| | 1 | 0 | Fast speed | | | | | | |
| | 1 | 1 | Invalid value | | | | | | |
| | carriage spec host comput but still perf | At normal speed, the scanner processes the image at the slowest possible carriage speed and performs handshaking on all data exchanges with the host computer. At high speed, the scanner runs the carriage at high speed but still performs handshaking on all data exchanges with the host computer. At normal and high speeds, data handshaking prevents the | | | | | | | |
| | At fast speed, the scanner runs the carriage at high speed but does no perform any handshaking during data exchanges with the host. Eliminating the handshaking greatly improves the data exchange rat between the scanner and the host computer. However, image data m lost if the host computer cannot keep up with the scanner. If the scan loses data due to an overrun condition, it aborts the scan with a CHE CONDITION status. | | | | | | | | |
| CCD | causes the so lamp is turn | canner to sw ed on. A val | to the CCD array in the scanner. A value of 1 vitch on the CCD array whenever the scanner lue of 0 causes the scanner to switch on the CCD o SCAN operations. | | | | | | |

Lamp This bit controls the fluorescent lamp used to illuminate the document during scanning. A value of 1 turns on the lamp. A value of 0 turns it off.

In addition, other conditions may affect whether the lamp is on or off. Once the lamp has been turned on, it remains on until two minutes elapse without SCSI activity. The next SCSI command turns on the lamp for a minimum period of two minutes.

Apple-Specific Parameter Page Description for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-13 shows the Apple-specific parameter page for the Color OneScanner.

Figure 7-13 The MODE SELECT Apple-specific parameter page for the Color OneScanner

| | | | | | Bit nu | ımber | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|--------------------|--|--------|----------------|---------------|------------------|----------------|--------------|--|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | |
| | 0-3 | | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| | 4 | (\$0) | (\$0) Rsvd (\$0) Apple unique control parameters | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | (\$06) Parameter length | | | | | | | | | |
| ber | 6 | | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 3 | | | (\$0 |) Rese | rved | Scan LED | Gamma reset | 3x3 reset | | | |
| Byte | 8 | (\$ | 0) Res | erved | MTF circuit | ICP bypass | Data polarity | CCD on | Lamp on | | | |
| | 9 | Color sense select | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 10 | | | (\$00) | ۴ | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 11 | | | (\$00) | F | Reserved | | | | | | |

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this page:

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Apple-unique control parameters

Apple unique control parameters are reserved for specific Apple functions. This field is reserved for Page Code, which identifies the page type. Set it to 0.

Parameter length

| Parameter len | gth |
|---------------|---|
| | This field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the parameter page, not including bytes 0-5. Set it to \$06. |
| Scan LED | This bit controls the setting of the amber LED on the Color OneScanner. A value of 1 turns on the LED. A value of 0 turns it off. |
| Gamma reset | When this bit is set (1) the scanner loads the gamma table with default values, which are chosen so that the output data is the same as the input data. The default value is 0. |

| 3 x 3 reset | table. | his bit directs the scanner to load the default 3-by-3 color correction able. When this bit is set (1), the following default 3-by-3 matrix is baded. The default value is 0. | | | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | | | |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 | | | | | |
| | 0 | 0 | 1 | | | | | |
| MTF circuit | Turns | the MTF | (modulation transfer function) peaking circuit on or off. | | | | | |
| | 1 | MTF pe | eaking circuit on | | | | | |
| | 0 | MTF pe | eaking circuit off | | | | | |
| ICP bypass | | | s whether the ICP is to be used or bypassed. When the field cuit is bypassed. When it is reset (0) the circuit is used. | | | | | |
| Data polarity | set (1) | | ines the polarity of the output image data. When it is ite and FF is black. In normal mode, it is reset to 0, and 00 white. | | | | | |
| CCD on | causes lamp i | s the scan s turned | Is power to the CCD array in the scanner. A value of 1 oner to power on the CCD array whenever the scanner on. A value of 0 causes the scanner to power on the CCD esponse to SCAN operations. | | | | | |
| Lamp on | | | ls the fluorescent lamp used to illuminate the document ig. A value of 1 turns on the lamp. A value of 0 turns it off. | | | | | |
| | Once t withou | he lamp ut SCSI a | her conditions may affect whether the lamp is on or off. has been turned on, it remains on until two minutes elapse ctivity. The next SCSI command turns on the lamp for a od of two minutes. | | | | | |
| Color sensor s | | | | | | | | |
| | | ed for sca | or select field decides which color sensor line or lines are inning. The green line sensor is the default for gray scale | | | | | |

Disconnect-Reconnect Parameter Page Description

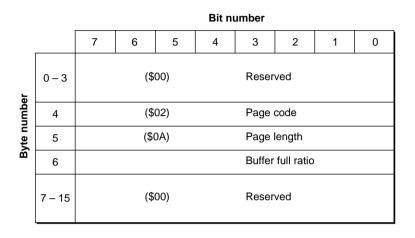
Figure 7-14 shows the disconnect-reconnect parameter page. You may use this page for the Apple Scanner, the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner.

Here is a list of the fields used in this page:

ReservedThese fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.Page codeThis field identifies the parameter page as a disconnect-reconnect page.
Set it to \$02.Page lengthThis field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the
parameter page, not including bytes 0–5. Set it to \$0A.

Figure 7-14

The MODE SELECT disconnect-reconnect parameter page



Buffer full ratio

Indicates to the scanner how full the scanner's image buffer must be before the scanner returns image data to the host computer in response to a GET DATA STATUS command (with the Wait bit set to 1). This field provides the numerator of a fraction whose denominator is 255. The resulting ratio controls how full the scanner buffer is allowed to get before data is returned to your program. The recommended value of 128 sets this threshold at 50 percent.

RESERVE (\$16)

The RESERVE command prevents all devices other than the requesting device from accessing the scanner. The scanner rejects commands that it receives from devices other than the initiating host and instead returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status. The host computer may reserve the target device for use by a third device by setting the third-party bit (3pty) in byte 1 of the command structure. In this case, only the third device can access the scanner to execute commands, although the initiating host computer may issue another RESERVE command or a RELEASE command. See "RELEASE (\$17)," later in this chapter. Figure 7-15 shows the format of the RESERVE command structure.

The RESERVE command is terminated by the RELEASE command or by another RESERVE command issued from the original RESERVE command initiator.

The RESERVE and RELEASE commands together provide the basic mechanism for bus-contention resolution in a multidevice SCSI bus environment. The mechanism works as follows: an application running on a host computer must have uninterrupted access to the scanner while transferring commands and data to and from the scanner. The RESERVE command provides a means for an application to have access to the scanner until it is no longer needed. The application then issues a RELEASE command, which releases the scanner so that another SCSI device on the bus can use it.

Figure 7-15 The RESERVE command structure

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------------|--|----------|---|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | | |
| 0 | (\$16) Operation code | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | (\$0) | Res | erved | 3pty | Third device id | | | Rsvd | | | | |
| 2 | (\$00) | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 2 3 4 | 0 1 (\$0) 2 (\$00) 3 (\$00) 4 (\$00) | 0 | 0 (\$16) 1 (\$0) Reserved 2 (\$00) 3 3 (\$00) 4 | 7 6 5 4 0 (\$16) Op 1 (\$0) Resrved 3pty 2 (\$00) Re 3 (\$00) Re | 7 6 5 4 3 0 (\$16) Operation of Operation of 3 (\$00) Operation of Reserved 1 (\$0) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved | 7 6 5 4 3 2 0 (\$16) Operation code 1 (\$0) Reserved 3pty Third device 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 (\$16) Operation code 1 (\$0) Reserved 3pty Third device id 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved | | | | |

Bit number

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the RESERVE command is \$16.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

3pty This bit contains the third-device flag. When set to 1, this flag indicates that the scanner is to be reserved for use by a device other than the host computer. You specify the SCSI logical unit number for that other device in the Third device id field.

Third device id

This field specifies the SCSI logical unit number of the device for which the scanner is being reserved. Use this field only if you are reserving the scanner for another device and your program has set the 3pty bit to 1. Otherwise, set this field to 0.

RELEASE (\$17)

The RELEASE command removes the specified reservation on the scanner. Only the device that issued the original RESERVE command can execute RELEASE. See "RESERVE (\$16)," earlier in this chapter, for more information. Figure 7-16 shows the format of the RELEASE command structure.

Figure 7-16 The RELEASE command structure

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|---|--------|----------|-----------------|---|---|------|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| Byte number | 0 | | | (\$17) | Op | Operation code | | | | | |
| | 1 | (\$0) Res | | erved | 3pty | Third device id | | | Rsvd | | |
| | 2 | (\$00) | | (0) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 3 | (\$00) | | (0) | Re | eserved | | | | | |
| Ð. | 4 | (\$00) | | (0) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 5 | (\$00) | | (0) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| | | (. , | | () | | | | | | | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the RELEASE command is \$17.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

3pty This bit contains the third-party device flag. When set to 1, this flag indicates that the scanner is to be released from use by a device other than the host computer. You specify the SCSI logical unit number for that other device in the Third device id field.

Third device id

This field specifies the SCSI logical unit number of the device from which the scanner is being released. Use this field only if you are releasing the scanner for another device and your program has set the 3pty bit to 1. Otherwise, set this field to 0. CHAPTER 7

SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners

MODE SENSE (\$1A)

The MODE SENSE command allows the host computer to read back the parameter information that was sent to the scanner with the MODE SELECT command. See "MODE SELECT (\$15)," earlier in this chapter, for more information. Figure 7-17 shows the format of the MODE SENSE command structure. The scanner returns the information to the host computer in one or more MODE SENSE data pages as appropriate for the request and the type of scanner attached. The format of the data pages is described later in this section.

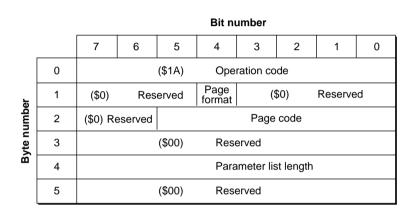


Figure 7-17 The MODE SENSE command structure

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

| | The operation code for the MODE SENSE command is \$1A. | | |
|--|---|--|--|
| Reserved | These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0. | | |
| Page format | This bit indicates that the return data is formatted into pages. Set it to 1. | | |
| Page code This field indicates which type of data page is to be returned. Set it to 0 to request that the Apple-specific data page appropria attached scanner be returned. Set it to 2 to request that the disconnect-reconnect data page be Set it to \$3F to request both pages. | | | |
| Parameter list | length | | |
| | This field contains the expected length, in bytes, of the data to be returned to the host computer. A transfer length of 0 indicates that no return data is to be passed. (This is not an error condition). The scanner stops transferring data when it has returned Parameter list length bytes or all appropriate MODE SENSE data, whichever comes first. | | |

Apple-Specific Data Page Description for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-18 shows the Apple-specific data page for the Apple Scanner.

Figure 7-18 The MODE SENSE Apple-specific data page for the Apple Scanner

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|----|------------------------|--------|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----|---|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| | 0 | MODE SENSE data length | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$00) | | Reserv | ed | | | | |
| | 2 | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 3 | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| Byte number | 4 | | (\$00) | | Page code | | | | | |
| | 5 | | (\$06) | | Page le | | | | | |
| yte n | 6 | | (\$0) | | Reserv | Graymap | | | | |
| Ð, | 7 | | Au | to backg | ground-a | djustmer | nt thresh | bld | | |
| | 8 | | (\$0) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 9 | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 10 | | (\$00) | | Reserv | ed | | | | |
| | 11 | | (\$00) | | Reserv | ed | | | | |

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this page:

MODE SENSE data length

This field indicates the number of MODE SENSE data bytes that follow for this page. The value is \$0B.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. They are set to 0.

Page code This field identifies the page type. It is set to \$00.

- Page length This field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the parameter page, not including bytes 0–5. This field is set to 6.
- Graymap This field contains the value that controls the graymap function of the scanner. The graymap function allows the scanner to enhance detail in light areas or dark areas of a document, or not to enhance either. A value of 0 results in more detail in the darker areas of the document. A value of 1 results in no alteration of the data. A value of 2 results in more detail in the lighter areas of the document.

Auto background-adjustment threshold

This field indicates the threshold level at which the scanner determines whether a dot is black or white when the user selects automatic background adjustment. The default threshold level is 64.

When excessively dark areas of an original document are scanned, automatic background adjustment constantly adjusts the brightness level, resulting in more detail in the darker areas. Light areas are left unaltered. To select automatic background adjustment, set the Threshold parameter to 0 in the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command parameter list. See "DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$24)" later in this chapter.

Lamp This bit indicates the current state of the fluorescent lamp used to illuminate the document during scanning. A value of 1 indicates that the lamp is on; a value of 0 indicates that the lamp is off.

Apple-Specific Data Page Description for the OneScanner

Figure 7-19 shows the Apple-specific data page for the OneScanner.

Figure 7-19 The MODE SENSE Apple-specific data page for the OneScanner

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|------------|------------------------|---------|----|-------------|-------------|-------|--------|--|--|
| - | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | | MODE SENSE data length | | | | | | | | |
| | 1-3 | | | (\$00) | | Reserv | ed | | | | |
| | 4 | | | (\$00) | | Page code | | | | | |
| ŗ | 5 | | | (\$06) | | Page length | | | | | |
| nmbe | 6 | | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| Byte number | 7 | | (\$0) | Reserve | ed | | Scan LED | Reset | Button | | |
| Ð, | 8 | | (\$0) | Reserve | ed | Fast H | Fast L | CCD | Lamp | | |
| | 9 | | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 10 | | (\$00 | | | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 11 | (\$00) | | | | Reserved | | | | | |

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this page:

MODE SENSE data length

This field indicates the number of MODE SENSE data bytes that follow for this page. The value is \$0B.

- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- Page code This field identifies the page type. It is set to 0.

| Page length | This field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the parameter page, not including bytes 0–5. This field is set to \$06. |
|----------------|--|
| Scan LED | This bit indicates the setting of the amber LED on the OneScanner. A value of 1 indicates that the LED is on. A value of 0 indicates that the LED is off. |
| Reset | This bit indicates whether the scanner should reset the Button bit. It is used only for the MODE SELECT command. Do not use this bit. Applies only to scanners with ROM version 2.03, or earlier. |
| Button | This bit indicates the current state of the button on the OneScanner since the last reset request (a MODE SELECT command with the Reset bit set to 1). A value of 1 indicates that the button has been pressed. A value of 0 indicates that the button has not been pressed. Applies only to scanners with ROM version 2.03, or earlier. |
| Fast H, Fast L | |

Together, these bits indicate the scan speed for the scanner. Here are four possible values for these bits:

| Fast H | Fast L | Scan speed |
|--------|--------|---------------|
| 0 | 0 | Normal speed |
| 0 | 1 | High speed |
| 1 | 0 | Fast speed |
| 1 | 1 | Invalid value |

At normal speed, the scanner processes the image at the slowest possible carriage speed and performs handshaking on all data exchanges with the host computer. At high speed, the scanner runs the carriage at high speed but still performs handshaking on all data exchanges with the host computer. At normal and high speeds, data handshaking prevents the loss of image data.

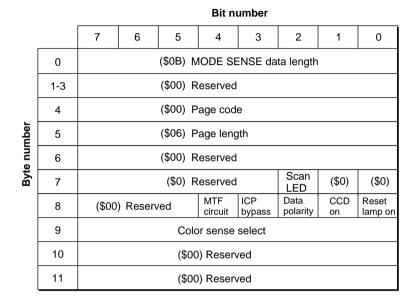
At fast speed, the scanner runs the carriage at high speed but does not perform any handshaking during data exchanges with the host. Eliminating the handshaking greatly improves the data exchange rate between the scanner and the host computer. However, image data may be lost if the host computer cannot keep up with the scanner. If the scanner loses data due to an overrun condition, it aborts the scan with a CHECK CONDITION status.

- CCD This bit controls power to the CCD array in the scanner. A value of 1 causes the scanner to power on the CCD array whenever the scanner lamp is turned on. A value of 0 causes the scanner to power on the CCD array only in response to SCAN commands.
- Lamp This bit indicates the current state of the fluorescent lamp used to illuminate the document during scanning. A value of 1 indicates that the lamp is on; a value of 0 indicates that the lamp is off.

Apple-Specific Data Page Description for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-20 shows the Apple-specific data page for the Color OneScanner.

 Figure 7-20
 The MODE SENSE Apple-specific data page for the Color OneScanner



Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this page:

MODE SENSE data length

- This field indicates the number of MODE SENSE data bytes that follow for this page. The value is \$0B.
- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- Page code This field identifies the page type. It is set to 0.
- Page length This field contains the length, in bytes, of the data portion of the parameter page, not including bytes 0–5. Set it to \$06.

Parameter length

This field contains the expected length, in bytes, of the data to be returned to the host computer. A transfer length of 0 indicates that no return data is to be passed. This is not an error condition. The scanner stops transferring data when it has returned Parameter list length bytes, or all appropriate MODE SENSE data, whichever comes first.

- Scan LED This bit indicates the setting of the amber LED which indicates the status of certain application functions. The default state for the LED is off.
- MTF circuit This bit indicates the setting of the MTF circuit. If it is set to 1, the circuit is turned on. When it is reset to 0, the circuit is turned off.

CHAPTER 7

SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners

| ICP bypass | This bit indicates the setting of the ICP. When it is set to 1, the circuit is bypassed. When it is reset to 0, the circuit is used. |
|----------------|--|
| Data polarity | This bit indicates the polarity of the output image data. When it is set (1), $00 =$ white, and FF = black. When it is reset (0), $00 =$ black, and FF = white. The latter is the normal mode. |
| CCD on | This bit indicates if the scanner has turned on power to the CCD (charge-coupled device) array when the scanning lamp is on. Whenever the scan command is issued, the CCD is powered up, even if the CCD on bit is set to 0. |
| Lamp on | This bit, when set, indicates the scanner has turned on the lamp. The scanner goes through a shading correction before each scan, regardless of the state of the Lamp on bit. The lamp remains on until the next MODE SELECT signal is received, and the field is cleared. At this time, the lamp resumes normal on/off operation. If the lamp is on and there is no SCSI activity for more two minutes or more, the lamp turns off. When the scanner receives any SCSI command, the lamp turns on for a minimum of two minutes. |
| Color sense se | elect |

This field indicates which color sensor line or lines are selected for scanning. The green line sensor is the default for grayscale scanning.

SCAN (\$1B)

The SCAN command instructs the scanner to begin the scanning operation. Following the SCAN command structure, you may choose to send a Window identifier byte that identifies the scan area to process. See "DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$24)," later in this chapter, for more information.

For the Color OneScanner, there are two ways to abort a scan. The first way is to send the ABORT message. The second way is to issue the SCAN command, with the Transfer length parameter set to 0. For Apple Scanners and OneScanners, sending any command will abort the scan.

SCAN Command Structure for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-21 shows the format of the SCAN command structure for the Apple Scanner.

| | | Bit iluiibei | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|-----------------|---|-------|--------------------|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| Byte number | 0 | | (| \$1B) | B) Operation code | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (| \$00) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 2 | | (| \$00) | 0) Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 3 | | (| \$00) | 00) Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 4 | (\$00) | | | 0) Transfer length | | | | | | |
| | 5 | Wait No home | | | (\$0) Reserved | | | | | | |

| Figure 7-21 | The SCAN command structure for the Apple Scanner |
|-------------|--|
|-------------|--|

Rit number

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the SCAN command is \$1B.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

This field indicates whether the application supplies a Window identifier byte after the 6 command bytes. A transfer length of 0 indicates that the application supplies no Window identifier byte and that no scan will take place. A transfer length of 1 indicates that the application supplies a Window identifier byte immediately after the command structure. The Window identifier byte must correspond to a Window identifier supplied to the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command.

| Wait | If this bit is set to 1, the user must press the button on the scanner before the scanner will begin scanning. |
|---------|---|
| No home | If this bit is set to 1, the scanner lamp stays on and the carriage assembly remains where it stops at the end of a scan. After two minutes, if the scanner does not receive another SCAN command, the lamp goes off and the carriage assembly returns to the home position. |

SCAN Command Structure for the OneScanner

Figure 7-22 shows the SCAN command structure for the OneScanner.

| Figure 7-22 The SCAN command structure for the OneScanner | |
|---|--|
|---|--|

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|---------|---------|----------|-----------------|---------|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | (\$1B) | | | | Operation code | | | | | |
| з | 1 | | (| \$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| Byte number | 2 | | (| \$00) | | Reserved | | | | | |
| yte n | 3 | | (| \$00) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| Ð. | 4 | | | | | Transfer length | | | | | |
| | 5 | (\$0) Re | eserved | Non-Cal | | (\$0) | Reserve | d | | | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the SCAN command is \$1B.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

This field indicates whether the application supplies a Window identifier byte after the 6 command bytes. If the value of the transfer length is 0, the application supplies no Window identifier byte and no scan takes place. If the value of the transfer length is 1, the application supplies a Window identifier byte immediately after the command structure. The Window identifier byte must correspond to a Window identifier field value supplied to the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command. Figure 7-23

SCSI Commands for Apple Scanners

Non-Cal Controls whether the scanner calibrates for the current lamp intensity before starting the scan. If this bit is set to 1, the scanner does not perform calibration. If this bit is set to 0, the scanner calibrates for the current lamp intensity before scanning. This calibration step takes a few seconds. Your application can reduce scan time by skipping this calibration step. However, skipping lamp calibration compromises scan quality. Consequently, your application does not use calibration except for preview scans.

SCAN Command Structure for the Color OneScanner

Table 1 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 (\$1B) Operation code 0 (\$00) Reserved 1 2 (\$00) Reserved (\$00) Reserved 3 Transfer length 4 (\$00) Reserved 5

The SCAN command structure for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-23 shows the format of the SCAN command structure for the Color OneScanner.

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

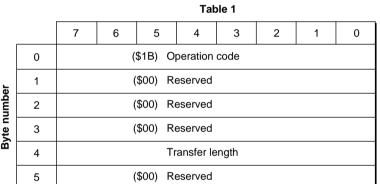
Operation code

The operation code for the SCAN command is \$1B.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

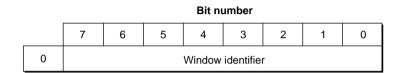
This field indicates whether the application supplies a Window identifier byte after the 6 command bytes. A transfer length of 0 indicates that the application supplies no Window identifier byte and that no scan will take place. If a transfer length of 0 is sent to the scanner while a scanning operation is in progress, the scan operation will be aborted. A transfer length of 1 indicates that the application supplies a Window identifier byte immediately after the command structure. The Window identifier byte must correspond to a Window identifier supplied to the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command.



Window Parameter List

To cause the scanner to scan a document, you must append a Window identifier byte to the SCAN command structure. The Window identifier byte specifies the scan area and related scanning parameters, and it must correspond to a window identifier defined with the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command. Figure 7-24 shows the command byte format.

Figure 7-24 The SCAN command Window identifier byte



FIELD DESCRIPTION

Window identifier

Specifies the scan area and related parameters for the scan operation. The value of the identifier byte must be the same as the value of the Window identifier byte indicated in the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command for that window.

SEND DIAGNOSTIC (\$1D)

The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command directs the scanner to run a built-in self-test. Figure 7-25 shows the format of the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command structure.

Figure 7-25 The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command structure

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|-----|--------|------------|----------------|---------------|-------|----------|--|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | | |
| Byte number | 0 | | (| (\$1D) | | Operation code | | | | | | |
| | 1 | (\$ | 50) | R | eserved | | Self- test | (\$0) | Reserved | | | |
| | 2 | | | (\$00) | i00) Reser | | | ved | | | | |
| | 3 | | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | | |
| B | 4 | | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | | (\$00) | | Reserved | | | | | | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

| operation code | | | | | |
|----------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| | The operation code for the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command is | | | | |
| Reserved | These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0. | | | | |
| Self-test | Set this bit to 1 to request a self-test. | | | | |

DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$24)

Before the scanner can perform a scan, the application program must provide certain details about the scan area. This information is provided in the form of parameters defining a window for each scan area. The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command passes this window-definition data to the scanner. The program defines the size, position, scanning resolution, scanning composition, and other parameters of each window. There are different parameter structures for each supported scanner. These structures are described later in this section.

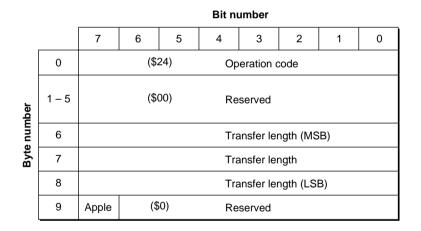
IMPORTANT

The OneScanner and Color OneScanner do not support multiple windows. ▲

DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Command Structure for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-26 shows the format of the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure for the Apple Scanner.

Figure 7-26 The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure for the Apple Scanner



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command is \$24.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

This field contains the length, in bytes, of the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list. A transfer length of 0 indicates that the application program does not pass any parameters (this is not an error condition). The transfer length indicates the total length of all window descriptors and window parameter lists. The total transfer length is

8 + (40 * *n*) bytes

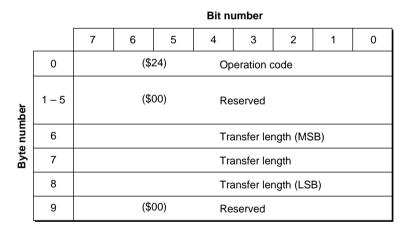
where *n* is the number of windows. Byte 6 of the structure contains the most-significant byte of the transfer length; byte 8 contains the least-significant byte of the transfer length.

Apple This bit, if set to 1, allows the Apple Scanner to recognize multiple window descriptors.

DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Command Structure for the OneScanner and the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-27 shows the format of the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure for the OneScanner.

| Figure 7-27 | The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure for the OneScanner |
|-------------|---|
| | and the Color OneScanner |



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command is \$24.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

This field contains the length, in bytes, of the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list. If the value of the transfer length is 0, the application does not pass any parameters (this is not an error condition). The transfer length indicates the total length of all window descriptors and window parameter lists. The total transfer length must be set to \$48 for the Apple Scanner and the OneScanner, and to \$50 for the Color OneScanner. Byte 6 of the structure contains the most-significant byte of the transfer length; byte 8 contains the least-significant byte of the transfer length.

DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Parameter List for the Apple Scanner

The window parameter list for the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command consists of one parameter list header and one or more unique window descriptors. When the user wants to scan more than one window, the application program must supply one window descriptor for each window. Figure 7-28 shows the format of the parameter list header and descriptor.

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

156

The parameter list header describes the length, in bytes, of a window descriptor. An application program may transfer a maximum of 99 window descriptors. Here are the parameter list fields used in this structure:

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Parameter list length

This field specifies the length in bytes of a single window descriptor. Always set this field to 40 (\$28).

The window descriptor contains information about one window. Here are the window descriptors used in this structure:

Window identifier

This field contains a number between 0 and 255, which uniquely identifies the window defined by the descriptor. Use this unique identifier to identify each window during data transfers and status requests.

- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- X resolution This field specifies the resolution, in dots per inch, along the horizontal direction (x-axis). In Line Art mode and Halftone mode, the Apple Scanner supports resolutions of 300, 285, 270, 255, 240, 225, 210, 200, 195, 180, 165, 150, 135, 120, 105, 100, 90, and 75 dpi. In Grayscale mode, the Apple Scanner supports resolutions of 300, 200, 150, 100, and 75 dpi. A value of 0 in this field indicates that the scanner uses a default horizontal resolution value of 75 dpi.

Figure 7-28 The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list for the Apple Scanner

| | | | | | Bit nu | umber | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|--------|-------|----|-----------------------------|------------|----------|-------|---------|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 – 5 | (\$00) | | | Reserved | | | | | | |
| Parameter — list header | 6 | | | | Parameter list length (MSB) | | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | Paramete | r list len | gth (LSB |) | | | |
| , | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ĺ | 0 | | | | Window id | dentifier | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$00 | D) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 2 | | | | X resolution | on (MSE | 3) | | | | |
| | 3 | | | | X resolution | on (LSB) |) | | | | |
| | 4 | | | | Y resolution (MSB) | | | | | | |
| | 5 | | | | Y resolution (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | 6 – 9 | | | | Upper-left upper-left | | | ١ | | | |
| | 10 – 13 | | | | Upper-left upper-left | • • | | ٦ | | | |
| Min daw | 14 – 17 | | | | Width (MS width (LS | | ugh | | | | |
| Window — descriptor | 18 – 21 | | | | Length (N length (LS | | bugh | | | | |
| | 22 | | | | Brightnes | s | | | | | |
| | 23 | | | | Threshold | 1 | | | | | |
| | 24 | | | | Contrast | | | | | | |
| | 25 | | | | Image co | mpositio | n | | | | |
| | 26 | | | | Bits per p | ixel | | | | | |
| | 27 | | | | Halftone p | attern (I | MSB) | | | | |
| | 28 | | | | Halftone p | battern (l | LSB) | | | | |
| | 29 | | (\$00 | D) | Reserved | | | Paddi | ng type | | |
| | 30 | | (\$00 | D) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 31 | | (\$00 | D) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 32 | | | | Compress | sion type |) | | | | |
| | 33 – 39 | | (\$00 |) | Reserved | | | | | | |

- Y resolution This field specifies the resolution, in dots per inch, in the vertical direction (y-axis). In Line Art mode and Halftone mode, the Apple Scanner supports resolutions of 300, 285, 270, 255, 240, 225, 210, 200, 195, 180, 165, 150, 135, 120, 100, 90, and 75 dpi. In Grayscale mode, the Apple Scanner supports resolutions of 300, 200, 150, 100, and 75 dpi. A value of 0 in this field indicates that the scanner uses a default vertical resolution value of 75 dpi.
- Upper-left x This field specifies the x-coordinate of the upper left corner of the rectangular window to be scanned. The point (0,0) is considered the upper-left corner of the window. Coordinates are measured from this point in increments of 1/1200 of an inch from the right edge of the scanner's glass surface (as viewed when you face the glass). Coordinates must be multiples of 8 times the x resolution; they must lie on byte boundaries. The default value of this field is 0.
- Upper-left y This field specifies the y-coordinate of the upper-left corner of the rectangular window to be scanned. The point (0,0) is considered the upper-left corner of the window. Coordinates are measured from this point in increments of 1/1200 of an inch from the top edge of the scanner's glass surface. The default value of this field is 0.
- Width This field specifies the window width in increments of 1/1200 of an inch along the horizontal axis. This value must be a multiple of 8 times the x resolution; the window border must lie on a byte boundary. The default value of this field is 10,208.
- Length This field specifies the window length in increments of 1/1200 of an inch along the vertical axis. The default value of this field is 13,200.
- Brightness This field specifies the brightness. A value of 0 results in the default value of 128. Any other value indicates a relative brightness: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average setting.
- Threshold This field specifies the threshold level. A value of 0 in Line Art mode causes the scanner to use automatic background adjustment. See "MODE SELECT (\$15)," earlier in this chapter, for a description of the Auto background-adjustment threshold field. A value of 0 received in any other mode results in the use of the default setting. Any other value indicates a relative threshold parameter: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average setting. The default value for this parameter is 128.
- Contrast This field specifies the contrast at which the scanner scans the document. A value of 0 indicates that the scanner uses the default value of 1. Any other value indicates a relative contrast: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average setting. The contrast setting is valid only in Halftone mode and Grayscale mode.

Image composition

This field specifies the type of image data acquired. The default composition mode is Line Art mode. The following values are valid:

- \$00 Line Art mode
- \$01 Halftone mode
- \$02 Grayscale mode
- Bits per pixel This field specifies, for any one pixel, the number of bits used to specify the visible density of the document being scanned. This field is valid only if the Image composition field indicates that gray-scale data is desired. The Apple Scanner supports 16 levels of gray in Grayscale mode and only black and white in Line Art mode and Halftone mode. Therefore, 4 bits per pixel are required to represent the full range of grays, and only 1 bit per pixel is required to represent either black or white.

Halftone pattern

This field specifies the halftone process by which the scanner converts multilevel gray tones to black and white dots. This parameter is only valid when the Image composition field specifies that halftone image data is desired. The following values are valid:

- \$00 Spiral
- \$01 Bayer
- \$02 Downloaded pattern
- Padding type This field specifies what the scanner does if the image data transmitted to the host is not a whole number of bytes. This field must be \$03, which truncates the data to the next byte boundary.

Compression type

This field specifies the compression technique that the scanner applies to the image data prior to transmission to the host computer. The default is no compression. The following values are valid:

- \$00 No compression
- \$01 CCITT Group III, one-dimensional
- \$83 White line skipped

DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Parameter List for the OneScanner

The window parameter list for the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command consists of one parameter list header followed by at most one window descriptor. Figure 7-29 on page 160 shows the format of the parameter list header and descriptor for the OneScanner.

Figure 7-29 The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list for the OneScanner

| | | | | | Bit n | umber | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|--------|-------|----|-------------------------|------------|----------|--------|---------|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| _ | 0-5 | | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | |
| Parameter — list header | 6 | (\$00) | |)) | Paramete | r list len | gth (MSE | 3) | | |
| | 7 | | (\$28 | 3) | Paramete | r list len | gth (LSB | 5) | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | | Window i | dentifier | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 2 | | | | X resoluti | on (MSE | 3) | | | |
| | 3 | | | | X resoluti | on (LSB |) | | | |
| | 4 | | | | Y resoluti | on (MSE | 3) | | | |
| | 5 | | | | Y resoluti | on (LSB |) | | | |
| | 6 – 9 | | | | Upper-lef upper-left | • | | h | | |
| | 10 – 13 | | | | Upper-lef upper-left | • | | h | | |
| Window — descriptor | 14 – 17 | | | | Width (M width (LS | , | ugh | | | |
| | 18 – 21 | | | | Length (N length (LS | | ough | | | |
| | 22 | | | | Brightnes | s | | | | |
| | 23 | | | | Threshold | ł | | | | |
| | 24 | | | | Contrast | | | | | |
| | 25 | | | | Image co | mpositio | n | | | |
| | 26 | | | | Bits per p | ixel | | | | |
| | 27 | | | | Halftone p | battern (| MSB) | | | |
| | 28 | | | | Halftone p | battern (| LSB) | | | |
| | 29 | | (\$0 |)) | Reserved | | | Paddir | ng type | |
| | 30 | | | | Scan dire | ction (M | SB) | | | |
| | 31 | | | | Scan dire | ction (LS | SB) | | | |
| | 32 | | | | Compres | sion type |) | | | |
| | 33 | | | | Compression argument | | | | | |
| | 34-39 | | (\$00 |)) | Reserved | | | | | |

160

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

The parameter list header describes the length, in bytes, of a window descriptor. An application program may transfer a maximum of one window descriptor. Here are the parameter list fields used in this structure:

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Parameter list length

This field specifies the length, in bytes, of a single window descriptor. Always set this parameter to 40 (\$28).

The window descriptor contains information about one window. Here are the window descriptors used in this structure:

Window identifier

This field identifies the window defined by the descriptor. This field must be set to 0.

- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- X resolution This field specifies the resolution, in dots per inch, along the horizontal direction (x-axis). The OneScanner supports horizontal resolutions that range from 72 to 300 dpi in 1-dpi increments. A value of 0 in this field indicates that the scanner uses a default horizontal resolution value of 72 dpi.
- Y resolution This field specifies the resolution, in dots per inch, in the vertical direction (y-axis). The OneScanner supports vertical resolutions that range from 72 to 300 dpi in 1-dpi increments. A value of 0 in this field indicates that the scanner uses a default vertical resolution value of 72 dpi.
- Upper-left x This field specifies the x-coordinate of the upper left corner of this rectangular window to be scanned. The point (0,0) is considered the upper left corner of the window. Coordinates are measured from this point in increments of 1/1200 of an inch from the right edge of the scanner's glass surface (as viewed when you face the glass). Coordinates must be multiples of 8 times the x resolution; they must lie on byte boundaries. The default value of this parameter is 0.
- Upper-left y This field specifies the y-coordinate of the upper left corner of this rectangular window to be scanned. The point (0,0) is considered the upper left corner of the window. Coordinates are measured from this point in increments of 1/1200 of an inch from the top edge of the scanner's glass surface. The default value of this parameter is 0.
- Width This field specifies the window width in increments of 1/1200 of an inch along the horizontal axis. This value must be a multiple of 8 times the x resolution; the window border must lie on a byte boundary. The default value of this parameter is 10,200.
- Length This field specifies the window length in increments of 1/1200 of an inch along the vertical axis. The default value of this parameter is 13,200.

| Brightness | This field specifies the brightness. A value of 0 results in the default value of 128. Any other value indicates a relative brightness: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average setting. | | | | | |
|----------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Threshold | This field specifies the threshold level. A value of 0 results in use of the default setting. Any other value indicates a relative threshold parameter: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average setting. The default value for this parameter is 128. | | | | | |
| Contrast | This field specifies the contrast at which the scanner scans the document. A value of 0 indicates that the scanner uses the default value of 128. Any other value indicates a relative contrast: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average setting. The contrast setting is valid only in Halftone mode and Grayscale mode. | | | | | |
| Image compo | | | | | | |
| | This field specifies the type of image data acquired. The default composition mode is Line Art mode. The following values are valid: | | | | | |
| | \$00 Line Art mode | | | | | |
| | \$01 Halftone mode | | | | | |
| | \$02 Grayscale mode | | | | | |
| Bits per pixel | This field specifies, for any one pixel, the number of bits used to specify the visible density of the document being scanned. This field is valid only if the Image composition field indicates that gray-scale data is desired. The OneScanner supports either 16 or 256 levels of gray in Grayscale mode. For 16-level gray support, set this field to 4; for 256-level gray support, set this field to 8. | | | | | |
| Halftone patte | ern | | | | | |
| | This field specifies the halftone process by which the scanner converts multilevel gray tones to black and white dots. This parameter is only valid when the Image composition field specifies that halftone image dat is desired. The following values are valid: | | | | | |
| | \$00 4-by-4 Spiral | | | | | |
| | \$01 4-by-4 Bayer | | | | | |
| | \$02 Downloaded pattern | | | | | |
| | \$03 8-by-8 Spiral | | | | | |
| | \$04 8-by-8 Bayer | | | | | |
| Padding type | This field specifies what the scanner does if the image data transmitted to the host is not a whole number of bytes. This parameter must be \$03, which truncates the data to the next byte boundary. | | | | | |
| Scan directior | This field specifies the direction for the scan operation. This field must be | | | | | |

Scan direction This field specifies the direction for the scan operation. This field must be set to 0, which specifies that the scan is to proceed from left to right and top to bottom.

Compression type

This field specifies the compression technique that the scanner applies to the image data prior to transmission to the host computer. This field must be set to 0, which indicates that the scanner is not to compress the image data.

Compression argument

This field is reserved.

DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS Parameter List for the Color OneScanner

The window parameter list for the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command consists of one parameter list header followed by at most one window descriptor. Figure 7-30 on page 164 shows the format of the parameter list header and descriptor for the Color OneScanner.

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

The parameter list header describes the length, in bytes, of a window descriptor. An application program may transfer a maximum of one window descriptor. Here are the parameter list fields used in this structure:

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Parameter list length

This field specifies the length in bytes of a single window descriptor. Always set this parameter to 42(\$2A).

The window descriptor contains information about one window. Here are the window descriptors used in this structure:

Window identifier

This field identifies the window defined by the descriptor. This field must be set to 0.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

X resolution This field specifies the resolution, in dots per inch, along the horizontal direction (x-axis). The Color OneScanner supports horizontal resolutions that range from 72 to 300 dpi in increments of 1 dpi. A value of 0 in this field indicates that the scanner uses a default horizontal resolution value of 72 dpi.

Y resolution This field specifies the resolution, in dots per inch, in the vertical direction (y-axis). The Color OneScanner supports vertical resolutions that range from 72 to 300 dpi in 1-dpi increments. A value of 0 in this field indicates that the scanner uses a default vertical resolution value of 72 dpi.

Figure 7-30 The DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list for the Color OneScanner

| | | | | | Bit nu | ımber | | | |
|----------------------------|---------|---|------------------------------------|-----|--------------------------|------------|----------|-------|---------|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| _ | 0-5 | | (\$00 |) F | Reserved | | | | |
| Parameter — list header | 6 | | (\$00 |) F | Paramete | r list len | gth (MSI | 3) | |
| | 7 | | (\$2A) Parameter list length (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0 | | | ١ | Vindow id | dentifier | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$00 |) F | Reserved | | | | |
| | 2 | | | > | < resolution | on (MSE | 3) | | |
| | 3 | | | > | < resolution | on (LSB |) | | |
| | 4 | | | ١ | / resoluti | on (MSE | 3) | | |
| | 5 | | | ١ | / resoluti | on (LSB |) | | |
| | 6 – 9 | | | | Jpper-left Jpper-left | | - | h | |
| | 10 – 13 | | | | Jpper-left .pper-left | | | h | |
| Window — descriptor | 14 – 17 | | | | Width (Mร vidth (LS | | ugh | | |
| | 18 – 21 | | | | ength (Nength (LS | | ough | | |
| | 22 | | | E | Brightnes | S | | | |
| | 23 | | | ٦ | Threshold | | | | |
| | 24 | | | (| Contrast | | | | |
| | 25 | | | I | mage coi | npositio | n | | |
| | 26 | | | E | Bits per p | ixel | | | |
| | 27 | | | F | Reserved | | | | |
| | 28 | | | F | Reserved | | | | |
| | 29 | | (\$00 |) F | Reserved | | | Paddi | ng type |
| | 30 | | | F | Reserved | | | | |
| | 31 | | | F | Reserved | | | | |
| | 32 | | | (| Compress | sion type | 9 | | |
| | 33 | | | (| Compress | sion arg | ument | | |
| | 34-39 | | (\$00 |) F | Reserved | | | | |
| (| 40 | | | [| Digital dat | a for VF | RT | | |
| | 41 | | | [| Digital dat | a for VF | RB | | |

| Upper-left x | rectangul upper left point in in scanner's must be n | specifies the x-coordinate of the upper left corner of the ar window to be scanned. The point $(0,0)$ is considered the corner of the window. Coordinates are measured from this increments of $1/1200$ of an inch from the right edge of the glass surface (as viewed when you face the glass). Coordinates multiples of 8 times the x resolution; they must lie on byte es. The default value of this parameter is 0. |
|--------------|--|---|
| Upper-left y | rectangul upper left point in in | specifies the y-coordinate of the upper left corner of the ar window to be scanned. The point $(0,0)$ is considered the corner of the window. Coordinates are measured from this accements of $1/1200$ of an inch from the top edge of the glass surface. The default value of this parameter is 0. |
| Width | along the resolutior | specifies the window width in increments of $1/1200$ of an inch horizontal axis. This value must be a multiple of 8 times the x n; the window border must lie on a byte boundary. The default his parameter is 10,200. |
| Length | | specifies the window length in increments of 1/1200 of an inch vertical axis. The default value of this parameter is 13,200. |
| Brightness | of the ana of 128. Ar voltage se | specifies the brightness by specifying the offset voltage or value log-to-digital converter. A value of 0 results in the default value by other value indicates a relative brightness: 255 is the lowest etting, giving the highest brightness; 1 is the highest voltage iving the lowest brightness; 128 is the average setting. |
| Threshold | default se 255 is the | specifies the threshold level. A value of 0 results in use of the tting. Any other value indicates a relative threshold parameter: highest setting, 1 is the lowest setting, and 128 is the average he default value for this parameter is 128. |
| Contrast | A value o other valu lowest set | specifies the contrast at which the scanner scans the document. f 0 indicates that the scanner uses the default value of 128. Any re indicates a relative contrast: 255 is the highest setting, 1 is the tting, and 128 is the average setting. The contrast setting is valid rayscale mode. |
| Image compo | sition | |
| | | specifies the type of image data acquired. The default is Line . Here are the valid values: |
| | \$00 I | ine Art mode (bi-level black and white) |
| | \$02 C | Grayscale mode (multi-level black and white) |
| | \$03 E | Bi-level Color mode (RGB) |
| | \$05 F | Full Color mode (RGB) |

Bits per pixel This field specifies, for any one pixel, the number of bits used to specify the visible density of the document being scanned. This field is only valid if the Image composition field indicates grayscale data is desired. The Color OneScanner supports 4 (\$04) and 8 (\$08) bits of gray-scale or color data, 3 bits for bi-level color, and 24 bits for full color (8 bits per color). For 16-level gray support, set this field to 4; for 256-level gray support, set this field to 8.

Padding type This field specifies what the scanner does if the image data transmitted to the host is not a whole number of bytes. This parameter must be \$03, which truncates the data to the next byte boundary.

Compression type

This field specifies the compression technique that the scanner applies to the image data prior to transmission to the host computer. This field must be set to 0, which indicates that the scanner is not to compress the image data.

Compression argument

This field is reserved.

Digital data for Vrt and Vrb

These fields determine the contrast range of a scanned image. Vrt (voltage reference top) determines the upper end of the contrast range, and Vrb (voltage reference bottom) the lower end of the contrast range. If there is a value of 0 in either Vrt or Vrb, Vrt and Vrb are disabled, and Brightness and Contrast are used instead. Any other setting between 1 and 255 indicates the scanner should use the related value, for example, if the setting is 3, the scanner should use the value 3, and so forth.

Using Window Descriptors With the Apple Scanner

Note

This section applies only to the Apple Scanner. •

If the Apple bit in a DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure is set to 1, an application program may send more than one window descriptor. The first window descriptor defines the primary window as well as the parameters for the entire scan. The additional window descriptors define secondary windows within the primary window, each of which may have a different image composition type. For example, the primary window could be used to define a scan as Line Art mode, and you may also define secondary windows within the primary windows within the primary window as Halftone composition.

Since halftone data is basically just a black-and-white image, the halftone data and line art data can be mixed freely. However, only halftone data and line art data can be mixed. Mixing with grayscale data is not allowed. If windows overlap, the window descriptor with the higher window identifier value takes priority.

Additional window descriptors must have all fields set to the same value as those in the primary window descriptor, except for the five fields that define the window rectangle (upper-left y, upper-left x, Width, Length, and Window identifier) and the Composition field. Window descriptor fields with different values result in an error. The byte-boundary restriction that applies to the parameters Width and upper-left x of the primary window does not apply to those parameters for secondary windows.

You may specify any window identifier as a parameter in the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command. All other commands—such as SCAN, GET DATA STATUS, and READ—accept only the window identifier of a primary window.

GET WINDOW PARAMETERS (\$25)

The GET WINDOWS PARAMETERS command provides a means for the initiator to get information about a window previously defined using the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command. Figure 7-31 shows the format of the GET WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure.

Note

This command is supported only by the Color OneScanner. •

Figure 7-31 The GET WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|---|---|--|--|--|---|--|
| | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| 0 | | (\$25) | | Ope | ration co | de | | | |
| 1 | 1 (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | (\$00) | | Res | erved | | | | |
| 5 | | (\$00) | | Res | erved | | | | |
| 6 | | | | Trar | sfer lenç | gth (MSB | 5) | | |
| 7 | | Transfer length | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Transfer length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | (\$00) | | Res | erved | | | | |
| | 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 | 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 | 0 (\$25) 1 (\$00) 2 (\$00) 3 (\$00) 4 (\$00) 5 (\$00) 6 7 8 | 0 (\$25) 1 (\$00) 2 (\$00) 3 (\$00) 4 (\$00) 5 (\$00) 6 7 8 | 7 6 5 4 0 (\$25) Ope 1 (\$00) Resc 2 (\$00) Resc 3 (\$00) Resc 4 (\$00) Resc 5 (\$00) Resc 6 Trans 7 Trans | 0(\$25)Operation co1(\$00)Reserved2(\$00)Reserved3(\$00)Reserved4(\$00)Reserved5(\$00)Reserved6Transfer leng7Transfer leng8Transfer leng | 7 6 5 4 3 2 0 (\$25) Operation code 1 (\$00) Reserved 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved 5 (\$00) Reserved 6 Transfer length (MSB 7 Transfer length (LSB) | 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 (\$25) Operation code 1 (\$00) Reserved 2 (\$00) Reserved 3 (\$00) Reserved 4 (\$00) Reserved 5 (\$00) Reserved 6 Transfer length (MSB) 7 Transfer length (LSB) | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the GET WINDOW PARAMETERS command is \$25.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer length

These fields specify the length, in bytes, of the window description information sent to the initiator. If the value of the transfer length is 0, no window description information was sent. This is not considered an error. The scanner stops transferring data when it has returned data equivalent to the transfer byte length, or when it has returned all appropriate GET WINDOWS data, whichever comes first.

Figure 7-32 shows the GET WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list.

Figure 7-32

The GET WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list

| | | | | E | Bit | | | |
|------|--------------------|--------------------|---|----------|-------------|------------|---------|--------|
| Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 0 | | · | | Data tra | insfer ler | ngth (MS | B) | • |
| 1 | | | | Data tra | insfer ler | ngth (LSE | 3) | |
| 2 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | ed | | | |
| 3 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | ed | | | |
| 4 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | ed | | | |
| 5 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | ed | | | |
| 6 | | (\$00) | | Window | descrip | tor length | n (MSB) | |
| 7 | | (\$2A) | | | | tor length | | |
| | | | | | descrip | | . , | |
| 0 | | | | | , identifie | | | |
| 1 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | ed | | | |
| 2 | | (. , | | X resolu | ution (MS | SB) | | |
| 3 | | | | | ition (LS | | | |
| 4 | | | | | ution (MS | | | |
| 5 | | | | | ution (LS | | | |
| 6 | | | | | eft X (MS | | | |
| 7 | | | | Upper le | | / | | |
| 8 | | | | Upper le | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | eft X (LS | B) | | |
| A | Upper left Y (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| В | Upper left Y | | | | | | | |
| C | Upper left Y | | | | | | | |
| D | | Upper left Y (LSB) | | | | | | |
| E | | | | Width (| | -, | | |
| F | | | | Width | | | | |
| 10 | | | | Width | | | | |
| 11 | | | | Width (I | _SB) | | | |
| 12 | | | | Length | | | | |
| 13 | | | | Length | (-) | | | |
| 14 | | | | Length | | | | |
| 15 | | | | Length | (LSB) | | | |
| 16 | | | | Brightne | | | | |
| 17 | | | | Thresho | | | | |
| 18 | | | | Contras | t | | | |
| 19 | | | | | omposit | ion | | |
| 1A | | | | Bits per | | | | |
| 1B | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 1C | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 1D | | (\$00) | | Reserve | ed | (3) | Paddin | g type |
| 1E | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | x - 7 | | 0.755 |
| 1F | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 20 | | (\$00) | | | ssion typ | pe | | |
| 21 | | (\$00) | | | ssion ar | | | |
| 22 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | <u> </u> | | |
| 23 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 24 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 25 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 26 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 27 | | (\$00) | | Reserve | | | | |
| 28 | | (400) | | | |) for VRT | - | |
| 29 | | | | | |) for VR | | |
| 20 | | | | | nui uula | , 101 VIXL | | |

READ (\$28)

The READ command instructs the scanner to send data currently in its memory to the host computer. With the Apple Scanner, the READ command may return only image data. With the OneScanner, the READ command may return image data or the contents of the scanner's calibration RAM or static RAM. The Color OneScanner may return image data, the 3-by-3 matrix for color correction, the gamma function table, and PSRAM data.

Use the GET DATA STATUS command to determine the amount of image data available for a particular window. See "GET DATA STATUS (\$34)," later in this chapter, for more information.

READ Command Structure for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-33 shows the format of the READ command structure for the Apple Scanner.

Figure 7-33The READ command structure for the Apple Scanner

| | | | Bit number | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------|---|-------------------|------------|----|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------|------|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | (\$28) | | | O | Operation code | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$0 | 0) | R | eserved | | | | | |
| | 2 | | (\$0 | 0) | Tr | ansfer d | ata type | | | | |
| er | 3 | (\$00) | | | Reserved | | | | | | |
| nmbe | 4 | Transfer ID (MSB) | | | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 5 | | | | Transfer ID (LSB) | | | | | | |
| Ð. | 6 | | | | AI | Allocation length (MSB) | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | AI | location | length | | | | |
| | 8 | | | | AI | location | length (L | .SB) | | | |
| 9 (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | | | | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the READ command is \$28.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

| Transfer | data | type |
|----------|------|------|
|----------|------|------|

This field specifies the type of data to be read. It must be set to \$00.

Transfer ID This field specifies the window for an image data read operation. Before the scanner can read data from a window, your application program must define the window in a DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command and then include it in the window list of a SCAN command.

Allocation length

This field specifies the maximum number of bytes that the host computer has allocated for the returned data. If the allocation length is 0, the scanner transfers no data (this is not an error condition). The command is terminated either when the host computer receives Allocation length bytes or when the scanner sends all available data, whichever is less. The GET DATA STATUS command determines the amount of data available for a given window.

READ Command Structure for the OneScanner

Figure 7-34 shows the READ command structure for the OneScanner. When reading the OneScanner calibration RAM, you must issue a read request for 2,550 bytes. When reading a downloaded halftone pattern from the OneScanner static RAM, you may read all or part of the pattern.

| Figure 7-34 | The READ command structure for the OneScanner |
|--------------|---|
| i igule /-J+ | The READ command structure for the Oneocarmer |

| | | | Bit number | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|-------------------------|------------|----------|----------|-------------------------|----------|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | 0 (\$28) Operation code | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | | (\$00) | Re | eserved | | | | | |
| | 2 | (\$0 | 0 or \$02 | or \$80) | Tr | ansfer d | ata type | | | | |
| er | 3 | | | (\$00) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 4 | | | (\$00) | Tr | Transfer ID (byte 1) | | | | | |
| yte n | 5 | | | (\$00) | Tr | Transfer ID (byte 2) | | | | | |
| Ð. | 6 | | | | AI | Allocation length (MSB) | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | AI | Allocation length | | | | | |
| | 8 | Allocation length (LSB) | | | | | | | | | |
| | 9 | | | (\$00) | Re | eserved | | | | | |

Bit numbe

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the READ command is \$28.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer data type

This field specifies the type of data to be read. Set this field to one of the following values:

- \$00 Read image data
- \$02 Read halftone pattern from static RAM
- \$80 Read calibration RAM
- Transfer ID This field specifies the window for an image data read operation. Before the scanner can read data from a window, your application program must define the window in a DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command and then include it in the window list of a SCAN command.

Allocation length

This field specifies the maximum number of bytes that the host computer has allocated for the returned data. If the allocation length is 0, the scanner transfers no data (this is not an error condition). The command is terminated either when the host computer receives Allocation length bytes or when the scanner sends all available data, whichever is less. The GET DATA STATUS command determines the amount of data available for a given window.

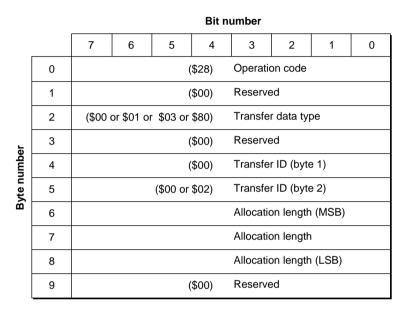
When reading the contents of the processor static RAM (Transfer data type set to \$02), you may read some or all of a downloaded halftone pattern. Set Allocation length to a value less than or equal to the size of the stored halftone matrix plus the dimension byte (see "Halftone Parameter Page Description," later in this chapter, for a detailed description of the format of a halftone matrix). You may not read the contents of any of the built-in halftone patterns.

When reading the contents of calibration RAM (Transfer data type set to \$80), you may read some or all of that memory. Set Allocation length to a value in the range from 1 through 255. Each returned byte contains the calibration data for the corresponding pixel sensor in the CCD array.

READ Command Structure for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-35 shows the READ command structure for the Color OneScanner. When reading the Color OneScanner calibration RAM, you must issue a read request for 8,100 bytes. When reading the 3-by-3 matrix table, you must issue a read request for 18 bytes. When reading the gamma table, you must issue a read request for 768 bytes.

Figure 7-35 The READ command structure for the Color OneScanner



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the READ command is \$28.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer data type

This field specifies the type of data to be read. Set this field to one of the following values:

- \$00 Read image data
- \$01 Read 3-by-3 matrix for color correction
- \$03 Read gamma function table
- \$80 Read calibration RAM

Transfer ID This field specifies the window for an image data read operation. Before the scanner can read data from a window, your application program must define the window in a DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command and then include it in the window list of a SCAN command. The first byte of the Transfer ID field is set to \$00, meaning only one window is supported. The second byte of the Transfer ID field differentiates between data transfers of the same Transfer data type, as shown in Table 7-2.

Allocation length

This field specifies the maximum number of bytes that the host computer has allocated for the returned data. If the allocation length is 0, the scanner transfers no data (this is not an error condition). The command is terminated either when the host computer receives Allocation length bytes or when the scanner sends all available data, whichever is less. The GET DATA STATUS command determines the amount of data available for a given window.

When reading the contents of the calibration RAM (Transfer data type set to \$80), you may read some or all of that memory. Set Allocation length to 8100. Each returned byte contains the calibration data for the corresponding pixel sensor in the CCD array. When reading the 3-by-3 matrix table, set the Allocation length to 18 bytes. When reading the Gamma table, set the Allocation length to 768 bytes

When reading image data, the data transferred must always be an even number of bytes. If the initiator asks for an odd number of bytes, the scanner returns a CHECK CONDITION status. If the initiator then sends a REQUEST SENSE command, the scanner returns SENSE KEY \$5, indicating that this is an illegal transaction. If the initiator sends SCSI commands REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, or GET WINDOW PARAMETERS, it can then ask for either an odd or an even number of bytes of data.

Table 7-2 Transfer data types and transfer identification

| Transfer data type | Transfer ID (and byte) | Description |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| \$00 | \$00 | Image data |
| \$01 | \$02 | 3-by-3 color correction matrix |
| \$03 | \$02 | Gamma function table |
| \$80 | \$02 | PSRAM table for red/green/blue |

The internal hardware structure of the scanner requires that each color of each line, or each line, in the case of monochrome modes, is composed of an even number of bytes. If the scan area requested results in a line that is not an even number of bytes in length, the scanner increases the scan width so that the scan line is an even number of bytes. Figure 7-36 illustrates what happens in this case. The host then adds the additional number of bytes, color, and lines to the originally requested scan width when reading the image data.

Figure 7-36 Extra bit or byte returned for different resolutions and composition modes

| Number of | Image composition | Additional bit | Image composition | | Add | itional b | it or byte |
|-----------------|-------------------|---------------------|-------------------|---------|---------|-----------|---------------------|
| pixels per line | monochrome | or byte per line | color | R | G | В | Total |
| 16N | 1 bit | 0 bits | 3 bit | 0 bits | 0 bits | 0 bits | 0 bits |
| 16N+1 | | 15 bits (15 pixels) | | 15 bits | 15 bits | 15 bits | 45 bits (15 pixels) |
| 16N+2 | | 14 bits (14 pixels) | | 14 bits | 14 bits | 14 bits | 42 bits (14 pixels) |
| 16N+3 | | 13 bits (13 pixels) | | 13 bits | 13 bits | 13 bits | 39 bits (13 pixels) |
| 16N+4 | | 12 bits (12 pixels) | | 12 bits | 12 bits | 12 bits | 36 bits (12 pixels) |
| 16N+5 | | 11 bits (11 pixels) | | 11 bits | 11 bits | 11 bits | 33 bits (11 pixels) |
| 16N+6 | | 10 bits (10 pixels) | | 10 bits | 10 bits | 10 bits | 30 bits (10 pixels) |
| 16N+7 | | 9 bits (9 pixels) | | 9 bits | 9 bits | 9 bits | 27 bits (9 pixels) |
| 16N+8 | | 8 bits (8 pixels) | | 8 bits | 8 bits | 8 bits | 24 bits (8 pixels) |
| 16N+9 | | 7 bits (7 pixels) | | 7 bits | 7 bits | 7 bits | 21 bits (7 pixels) |
| 16N+10 | | 6 bits (6 pixels) | | 6 bits | 6 bits | 6 bits | 18 bits (6 pixels) |
| 16N+11 | | 5 bits (5 pixels) | | 5 bits | 5 bits | 5 bits | 15 bits (5 pixels) |
| 16N+12 | | 4 bits (4 pixels) | | 4 bits | 4 bits | 4 bits | 12 bits (4 pixels) |
| 16N+13 | | 3 bits (3 pixels) | | 3 bits | 3 bits | 3 bits | 9 bits (3 pixels) |
| 16N+14 | | 2 bits (2 pixels) | | 2 bits | 2 bits | 2 bits | 6 bits (2 pixels) |
| 16N+15 | | 1 bits (1 pixels) | | 1 bits | 1 bits | 1 bits | 3 bits (1 pixel) |
| 4N | 4 bits | 0 bits | | | | | |
| 4N+1 | | 12 bits (3 pixels) | | | | | |
| 4N+2 | | 8 bits (2 pixels) | | | | | |
| 4N+3 | | 4 bits (1 pixels) | | | | | |
| 8N | 8 bits | 0 bytes | 24 bits | 0 bytes | 0 bytes | 0 bytes | 0 bytes |
| 8N+1 | | 1 byte (1 pixel) | | 1 byte | 1 byte | 1 byte | 3 bytes (1 pixel) |

SEND (\$2A)

The SEND command provides a means for the scanner to receive parameter data from the host computer. With the Apple Scanner, you can use this command to download halftone matrixes. With the OneScanner, you can use this command to download halftone matrixes or to set the contents of the scanner's calibration RAM. The Color OneScanner downloads a 3-by-3 matrix for color correction, the gamma table, and PSRAM data write. This section describes the SEND command structures for the Apple Scanner, the Apple OneScanner, and the Apple Color OneScanner. It also details the halftone matrix format for the Scanner and the OneScanner, and the Color OneScanner's 3-by-3 matrix, gamma table, and PSRAM data write.

SEND Command Structure for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-37 shows the format of the SEND command structure for the Apple Scanner.

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|------------|-------|----|-----------------------|----------|----------|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | | (\$2/ | O | peration | code | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$0 | 0) | R | eserved | | | | | |
| | 2 | | (\$0 | 2) | Tr | ansfer d | ata type | | | | |
| er | 3 | | (\$0 | 0) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| nmbe | 4 | | (\$0 | 0) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 5 | | (\$0 | 2) | Transfer ID byte | | | | | | |
| Ð, | 6 | | (\$0 | 0) | R | eserved | | | | | |
| | 7 | | (\$0 | 0) | Transfer length (MSB) | | | | | | |
| | 8 | | (\$1 | 1) | Transfer length (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | 9 (\$00) Reserved | | | | | | | | | | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the SEND command is \$2A.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer data type

This field indicates the type of parameter data to be transferred to the scanner. Only halftone parameter data may be transferred to the Apple Scanner. Set this field to \$02.

Transfer ID byte

This field indicates which halftone matrix within the scanner will be altered. This field must always be \$02.

Transfer length

This field indicates the amount of parameter data to be sent. Since the Apple Scanner supports this command only for 4-by-4 halftone matrixes, this parameter must always be set to 17 (\$11)—the size of a 4-by-4 halftone parameter page.

SEND Command Structure for the OneScanner

Figure 7-38 shows the SEND command structure for the OneScanner.

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|----------|-------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| er | 0 | | (\$2/ | ۹) | Operation code | | | | | | |
| | 1 | (\$00) | | | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 2 | | (\$02 or | \$80) | Tr | ansfer d | ata type | | | | |
| | 3 | | (\$0 | 0) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 4 | | | | Transfer ID (MSB) | | | | | | |
| yte n | 5 | | | | Transfer ID (LSB) | | | | | | |
| Ð, | 6 | | (\$0 | 0) | Reserved | | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | | Transfer length (MSB) | | | | | |
| | 8 | | | | Transfer length (LSB) | | | | | | |
| | 9 | (\$00) | | | Re | eserved | | | | | |

Figure 7-38 The SEND command structure for the OneScanner

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

Set the operation code to \$2A.

- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- Transfer ID This field indicates which halftone matrix within the scanner will be altered. This field must always be \$02.

Transfer data type

This field indicates the type of parameter data to be transferred to the scanner. Set this field to one of the following values:

- \$02 Send halftone pattern to static RAM
- \$80 Set calibration RAM

Transfer length

This field indicates the amount of parameter data to be sent. For halftone matrixes, set this field to the size of the matrix plus the dimension byte. (See "Halftone Parameter Page Description," later in this chapter, for a detailed description of the format of a halftone matrix.) The OneScanner supports both 4-by-4 and 8-by-8 halftone matrixes.

When setting the contents of the calibration RAM, you must set Transfer length to 2550. The parameter data consists of a contiguous buffer of 2550 bytes. Each byte of parameter data contains the new calibration data for the corresponding pixel sensor in the CCD array.

SEND Command Structure for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-39 shows the SEND command structure for the Color OneScanner.

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|----------|-----------------------|-------|-----------------------|----------------------|------|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | | | (| \$2A) | Operatio | on code | | | | |
| | 1 | | | (| \$00) | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 2 | | (\$01 or | • \$03 or | \$80) | Transfer data type | | | | | |
| Ŀ | 3 | | | (| \$00) | Reserved | | | | | |
| Byte number | 4 | 4 (\$00) | | | | | Transfer ID (byte 1) | | | | |
| yte n | 5 | | | (| \$02) | Transfe | r ID (byte | e 2) | | | |
| Ð. | 6 | | | (| \$00) | Reserved | | | | | |
| | 7 | | | Transfer length (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| | 8 | | | | | Transfer length (LSB) | | | | | |
| | 9 | | | (| \$00) | Reserved | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |

Bit number

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the SEND command is \$2A.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Transfer data type

This field indicates the type of parameter data to be transferred to the scanner. Set this field to one of the following values:

- \$01 Send 3-by-3 matrix for color correction
- \$03 Send gamma table
- \$80 Set calibration RAM (PSRAM)

Transfer ID This field is always set to \$02.

Transfer length

This field indicates the amount of parameter data to be sent.

If the transfer type is \$80 (set calibration RAM), you must set the transfer length to 8100 bytes, to update the PSRAM calibration data for all three lines of sensors. Each single byte of data contains the new calibration data (CD) for each CD pixel sensor in ascending order. Set the transfer length to 18 for the 3-by-3 matrix, and to 768 for the gamma correction table.

Halftone Parameter Page Description for the Apple Scanner and the OneScanner

The halftone parameter page, shown in Figure 7-40, defines the halftone matrix that the application program downloads to the scanner. The size of the parameter page varies according to the dimensions of the halftone matrix. The parameter page contains a single byte that indicates the matrix dimensions, followed by 1 byte of data for each matrix element. Thus, for a 4-by-4 matrix, the parameter page contains 17 bytes of data (the dimension byte followed by 16 bytes of matrix data), the parameter page for an 8-by-8 matrix contains 65 bytes, and so on.

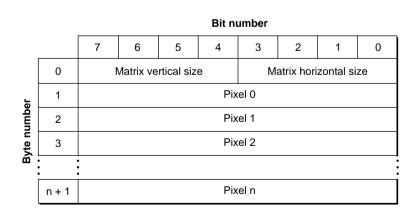


Figure 7-40 The SEND command halftone parameter page

Matrix vertical size, Matrix horizontal size

These fields indicate the dimensions of the matrix. The dimensions are encoded in a single byte, as follows: bits 4 through 7 contain the y dimension and bits 0 through 3 contain the x dimension. For a 4-by-4 matrix, set this field to \$44. For an 8-by-8 matrix, set this field to \$88. Figure 7-41 shows how the pixel numbers map onto a 4-by-4 matrix; pixels map similarly for an 8-by-8 matrix, except that there are eight rows, and each row contains eight elements.

Pixels 0 through n

Each of these pixel fields specifies a threshold level at which a particular pixel changes from black to white. Figure 7-41 shows the position of each pixel in a 4-by-4 matrix. The range of threshold values is from 0 to 255. In this range, 255 is the highest threshold setting, 0 is the lowest threshold setting, and 128 is the average threshold setting. A high threshold value results in most gray shades being changed to white. A low threshold value results in most gray shades being changed to black.

| Figure 7-41 | The halftone matrix pattern for a 4-by-4 matrix |
|-------------|---|
|-------------|---|

| <u> </u> | | | |
|----------|----|----|----|
| 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 |
| 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |

Gamma Data Write Format for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-42 shows the gamma data write format.

Figure 7-42 Gamma data write format

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----|--|---|----------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | Red gamma value for grayscale value of \$00 | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | Re | ed gamm | a value | for grays | cale valu | ue of \$01 | | | | |
| | 2 | Re | ed gamm | a value | for grays | cale valu | ue of \$02 | 2 | | | |
| er | | | | | | | | | | | |
| admu | 255 | Re | ed gamm | a value | for grays | cale valu | ue of \$25 | 5 | | | |
| Byte number | 256 | Gr | Green gamma value for grayscale value of \$00 | | | | | | | | |
| Ð, | 257 | Gr | Green gamma value for grayscale value of \$01 | | | | | | | | |
| | 258 | Gr | een gam | ima valu | e for gra | yscale v | alue of \$ | 02 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 511 | Gr | een garr | nma valu | e for gra | yscale v | alue of \$ | 255 | | | |
| | 512 | Bl | ue gamm | na value | for grays | scale val | ue of \$00 |) | | | |
| | 513 | Bl | Blue gamma value for grayscale value of \$01 | | | | | | | | |
| | 514 | Blue gamma value for grayscale value of \$02 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 767 | Bl | ue gamm | na value | for grays | scale val | ue of \$25 | 55 | | | |

Color Correction Matrix for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-43 shows the color correction matrix.

Figure 7-43 Color correction matrix

| | | | | | Bit nu | mber | | | | |
|-------------|----|----------------|---|---|---------|--------|---|---|---|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
| | 0 | K0 byte 1 (Ka) | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | | | K0 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| | 2 | | | | K1 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| er. | 3 | | | | K1 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| Byte number | 4 | | | | K2 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| /te ni | 5 | | | | K2 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| Ð, | 6 | | | | K3 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| | 7 | | | | K3 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| | 8 | | | | K4 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| | 9 | | | | K4 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| | 10 | | | | K5 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| | 11 | | | | K5 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| | 12 | | | | K6 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| | 13 | | | | K6 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| | 14 | | | | K7 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| | 15 | | | | K7 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |
| | 16 | | | | K8 byte | 1 (Ka) | | | | |
| | 17 | | | | K8 byte | 2 (Kb) | | | | |

The format for each byte is shown below. Ka corresponds to byte 1 of K0-8, and Kb corresponds to byte 2 of K0-8. The sign bit indicates plus or minus, MSB is the most significant bit, LSB the least significant bit.

| | | Ka | | Kb | | |
|-----------|--------|-----------|-------|-----------|-------|--|
| Byte | Bit 15 | Bits 9-14 | Bit 8 | Bits 7-1 | Bit 0 | |
| Ka and Kb | Sign | 0 | MSB | Data bits | LSB | |

PSRAM Data Write Format for the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-44 shows the PSRAM data write format.

Figure 7-44 PSRAM data write format

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------|------|--|--|----------|-----------|----------|-----------|----------|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | 0 | Calibration data for red CCD pixel sensor #1 | | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | Calibrat | ion data | for red (| CCD pixe | el sensor | #2 | | | |
| | 2 | | Calibrat | ion data | for red (| CCD pixe | el sensor | #3 | | | |
| er | | • | | | | | | | | | |
| Byte number | 2699 | | Calibrat | ion data | for red (| CCD pixe | el sensor | #2700 | | | |
| yte n | 2700 | | Calibrat | ion data | for gree | n CCD p | ixel sens | sor #1 | | | |
| Ð, | 2701 | | Calibration data for green CCD pixel sensor #2 | | | | | | | | |
| | 2702 | | Calibrat | ion data | for gree | n CCD p | ixel sens | sor #3 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5399 | | Calibrat | ion data | for gree | n CCD p | ixel sens | sor #270 | 0 | | |
| | 5400 | | Calibrat | ion data | for blue | CCD pix | el senso | or #1 | | | |
| | 5401 | | Calibrat | ion data | for blue | CCD pix | el senso | or #2 | | | |
| | 5402 | | Calibration data for blue CCD pixel sensor #3 | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 8099 | | Calibrat | ion data | for blue | CCD pix | el senso | or #2700 | | | |

OBJECT POSITION (\$31)

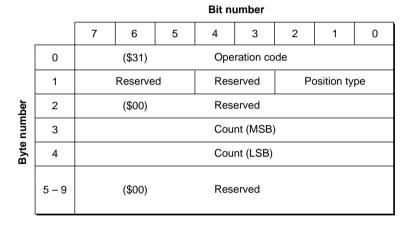
The OBJECT POSITION command allows the host computer to control the position of the scanner carriage assembly. The command provides options to park and unpark the carriage and to set the carriage to a specified position. Figure 7-45 shows the format of the OBJECT POSITION command structure.

Note

This command is valid only for the OneScanner and the Color OneScanner. The Apple Scanner does not support this command. •

Figure 7-45

The OBJECT POSITION command structure



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the OBJECT POSITION command is \$31.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Position type This field specifies the action for the scanner to take. Valid values are as follows:

Unpark carriage \$00

Instructs the scanner to move the carriage to the home position. If the carriage is already at the home position, the scanner returns a GOOD status. If the scanner cannot move the carriage to the home position, the scanner returns a CHECK CONDITION status and sets the sense data to VENDOR UNIQUE (\$9).

Park carriage \$01

Instructs the scanner to move the carriage to the shipment lock position. If the carriage is already at that position, the scanner returns a GOOD status.

Absolute position \$02

Instructs the scanner to position the carriage at the scan line specified in the Count field. A 0 value causes the scanner to place the carriage at the beginning of the scan area. Other values must indicate a valid y-axis position in increments of 1/1200 of an inch. If the value of Count corresponds to an invalid scan line, the scanner returns a CHECK CONDITION status and sets the sense data to ILLEGAL REQUEST (\$5).

Relative position \$03

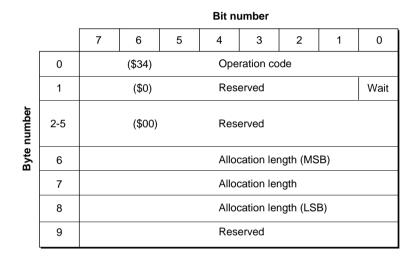
Instructs the scanner to move the carriage to a position relative to its current position. The value of the Count field indicates the direction and distance for the operation. Positive values move the carriage forward; negative values move the carriage backward. The distance is expressed in increments of 1/1200 of an inch. A 0 value does not move the carriage. If the value of Count yields an invalid scan line, the scanner returns a CHECK CONDITION status and sets the sense data to ILLEGAL REQUEST (\$5).

Count This field specifies the distance for absolute and relative position requests. The scanner ignores this field for park and unpark requests.

GET DATA STATUS (\$34)

The GET DATA STATUS command allows the host computer to determine how much image data the scanner currently holds. The host computer can then decide whether to issue a READ command to retrieve the stored data. The scanner reports data availability for those windows that were defined with the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command and were specified in the current SCAN command. Figure 7-46 shows the format of the GET DATA STATUS command structure. The returned data blocks for each supported scanner are described later in this section.

Figure 7-46 The GET DATA STATUS command structure



FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Here is a list of the fields and the bits used in this command structure:

Operation code

The operation code for the GET DATA STATUS command is \$34.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Wait This bit indicates when the scanner returns data status to the host computer. If the value of the field is 1, the scanner waits for the quantity of data in the scanner's internal memory to reach the limit set by the MODE SELECT command before the scanner responds with data. (This limit is set by the Buffer full ratio field of the disconnect-reconnect parameter page.) If the value is 0, the scanner responds immediately.

Allocation length

This field specifies the number of bytes that the host computer has allocated for returned data status. If the value of the Allocation length is 0, the scanner will not return data status (this is not an error condition). With any other value, the maximum number of bytes is transferred. The command terminates when the bytes specified by the Allocation length field have been transferred, or when all available status data bytes have been transferred to the host, whichever comes first.

GET DATA STATUS Return Structure Description for the Apple Scanner

Figure 7-47 shows the format of the GET DATA STATUS return structure for the Apple Scanner.

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---|------------|--------------------------|-------------------|-------|---|---|---|---|--|--|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | | |
| number | 0 | | (\$00) Data length (MSB) | | | | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$00) | Data length | | | | | | | |
| Byte nu | 2 | | (\$08) | Data length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| By | 3 | | (\$0) | | Block | | | | | | |

| 0 | | Window identifier |
|---|----------------------------|---|
| 1 | (\$00) | Reserved |
| 2 | (\$00) | Reserved |
| 3 | (\$00) | Reserved |
| 4 | (\$00) | Reserved |
| 5 | | Scan data available (MSB) |
| 6 | | Scan data available |
| 7 | | Scan data available (LSB) |
| | 1 2 3 4 5 6 | 1 (\$00) 2 (\$00) 3 (\$00) 4 (\$00) 5 |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

The parameter list header describes the length, in bytes, of the descriptor information that follows. Here are the parameter list fields used in this structure:

- Data length This field indicates the number of bytes of status data that follows, starting at byte 4. The value of this field does not include bytes 0 through 3. Each return structure is associated with a window descriptor. If the Apple bit is set in the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command, the scanner returns data status for only the first window descriptor. Data for secondary scan areas is returned together with the data for the primary scan area. The scanner indicates that a scan is complete and that all data has been transferred by setting the Data length field to 0 and sending no further status data.
- Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.
- Block This field indicates the scanner buffer status. A value of 1 indicates that the scanner's internal buffers are full and that the scanner must transfer all available scan data to the host computer before it can generate more scan data. The bit is also set to 1 when the scanner has reached the end of the scan, even though the buffer may not be full. A value of 0 indicates that the scanner is not currently blocked because of insufficient buffer space.

The data status descriptors contain information about defined scan windows. Each descriptor applies to a single window. Here are the data descriptors used in this structure:

Window identifier

This field identifies the window associated with this return structure. This value matches the window identifier in the window descriptor parameter of the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Scan data available

This field indicates the number of bytes of data that the scanner can send for the scan window identified by the Window identifier field. If the value is 0, it indicates that the scanner currently has no data available for the window (perhaps because it has not reached the window in its scanning process). This is not an error condition.

GET DATA STATUS Return Structure Description for the OneScanner and the Color OneScanner

Figure 7-48 shows the format of the GET DATA STATUS return structure.

Figure 7-48 The GET DATA STATUS return structure

| | | Bit number | | | | | | | |
|-------------|---|------------|--------|-------------------|-----|-------|---|---|-------|
| | | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Byte number | 0 | | (\$00) | Data length (MSB) | | | | | |
| | 1 | | (\$00) | Data length | | | | | |
| | 2 | | (\$08) | Data length (LSB) | | | | | |
| | 3 | | (\$0) | | Res | erved | | | Block |

| | 0 | | Window identifier | |
|----------|---|--------|---------------------------|--|
| | 1 | (\$00) | Reserved | |
| e number | 2 | (\$00) | Reserved | |
| | 3 | (\$00) | Reserved | |
| Byte | 4 | (\$00) | Reserved | |
| | 5 | | Scan data available (MSB) | |
| | 6 | | Scan data available | |
| | 7 | | Scan data available (LSB) | |

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

The parameter list header describes the length, in bytes, of the descriptor information that follows. Here are the parameter list fields and the bit used in this structure:

Data length This field indicates the number of bytes of status data that follows starting at byte 4. The value of this field does not include bytes 0 through 3. The OneScanner supports a single scan window, so this command never returns more than one descriptor. The scanner indicates that a scan is complete and that all data has been transferred by setting the data length field to 0 and sending no further status data.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Block This bit indicates the scanner buffer status. A value of 1 indicates that the scanner's internal buffers are full and that the scanner must transfer all available scan data to the host computer before it can generate more scan data. The bit is also set to 1 when the scanner has reached the end of the scan, even though the buffer may not be full. A value of 0 indicates that the scanner is not currently blocked because of insufficient buffer space.

The data status descriptors contain information about defined scan windows. Each descriptor applies to a single window. Here are the data descriptors used in this structure:

Window identifier

This field identifies the window associated with this return structure. This value matches the window identifier in the window descriptor parameter of the DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS.

Reserved These fields are reserved for future expansion. Set them to 0.

Scan data available

This field indicates the number of bytes of data that the scanner can send for the scan window identified by the Window identifier field. A value of 0 indicates that the scanner currently has no data available for the window (perhaps because it has not reached the window in its scanning process). This is not an error condition.

Appendixes

This appendix contains hardware specifications for the members of the Apple scanner product family.

Apple Scanner Specifications

Table A-1 contains the specifications of the Apple Scanner.

 Table A-1
 The Apple Scanner specifications

| Specifications | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| Physical proportions | |
| Depth | 21.8 in. (545 mm) |
| Width | 13.6 in. (340 mm) |
| Height | 4.4 in. (110 mm) |
| Weight | 20 lbs. (9.072 kg) |
| Microprocessor | |
| Туре | 8-bit NEC PD 7809 |
| Timing | 12 MHz |
| RAM size | 256 bytes |
| ROM size | 8 KB |
| DMAC | |
| Туре | NEC PD8237 |
| Timing | 4 MHz |
| DIPP | |
| Туре | NEC HD 63084 |
| Timing | 4 MHz |
| Dither pattern | 4-by-4 matrix |
| Grayscale | 16 gray shades |
| Memory | |
| RAM | 32 KB |
| ROM | Two 2 KB by 8 |

continued

| Table A-1 | The Apple | Scanner | specifications | (continued) |
|-----------|-----------|---------|----------------|-------------|
|-----------|-----------|---------|----------------|-------------|

| Specifications Noise (maximum) | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| Standby | <30 dB |
| Scanning | <55 dB |
| Temperature | |
| Operating temperature | +10° C to +40° C |
| Storage (6 months) | -40° C to +47° C |
| Transit (72 hours) | -40° C to +65° C |
| Humidity | |
| Storage (6 months) | 20% to 95% relative humidity |
| Power requirements | |
| AC input (U.S. & Canada model) | 120 V AC ±10%, 58 to 62 Hz |
| AC input (Universal model) | $100/120/200/220/240$ V AC $\pm 10\%$, 48 to 62 Hz |
| Power consumption | |
| Standby | 35 watts |
| Scanning | 65 watts |

Apple OneScanner Specifications

Table A-2 contains the specifications of the Apple OneScanner.

| Table A-2 | The Apple OneScanner specifications |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|
|-----------|-------------------------------------|

Specifications

Physical proportions

| Depth | 21.8 in. (545 mm) |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Width | 13.6 in. (340 mm) |
| Height | 4.4 in. (110 mm) |
| Weight | 23 lbs. (10.45 kg) |
| Microprocessor | |
| Туре | 8-bit 8031 |
| Timing | 12 MHz |
| RAM size | 8 KB |
| ROM size | 32 KB |

continued

| Table A-2 | The Apple OneScanner specifications (continued) |
|-----------|---|

| Specifications | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Image processor | |
| Туре | ASIC |
| Timing | 12 MHz |
| Dither patterns | 4-by-4 and 8-by-8 Spiral and Bayer patterns built in; downloaded patterns may range from 1-by-2 to 16-by-16 |
| Grayscale | 256 gray shades |
| Memory | |
| Calibration RAM | 4 KB |
| RAM | 32 KB |
| Noise (maximum) | |
| Standby | <30 dB |
| Scanning | <55 dB |
| Temperature | |
| Operating temperature | +10° C to +40° C |
| Storage (6 months) | -40° C to +47° C |
| Transit (72 hours) | -40° C to +65° C |
| Humidity (noncondensing | ·) |
| Storage (6 months) | 20% to 95% relative humidity |
| Power requirements | |
| AC input (U.S. & Canada model) | 120 V AC ±10%, 58 to 62 Hz |
| AC input (Universal model) | $100/120/200/220/240$ V AC $\pm 10\%,$ 48 to 62 Hz |
| Power consumption | |
| Standby | <22 watts |
| Scanning | <45 watts |
| | |

Apple Color OneScanner Specifications

Table A-3 contains the specifications of the Apple Color OneScanner.

Table A-3 The Apple Color OneScanner specifications

| Specifications | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Physical proportions | |
| Depth | 21.8 in. (545 mm) |
| Width | 13.6 in. (340 mm) |
| Height | 4.4 in. (110 mm) |
| Weight | 23 lbs. (10.45 kg) |
| Microprocessor | |
| Туре | 8-bit Z80 |
| Timing | 8MHz |
| RAM size | 8KB |
| ROM size | 64KB |
| Image processor | |
| Туре | ASIC |
| Timing | 16MHz |
| Dither patterns | Not supported |
| Grayscale | 256 gray shades |
| Color | 24-bit color |
| Memory | |
| Calibration RAM | 4 KB |
| RAM | 32 KB |
| Noise (maximum) | |
| Standby | <30 dB |
| Scanning | <55 dB |
| Temperature | |
| Operating temperature | +10° C to +40° C |
| Storage (6 months) | -40° C to +47° C |
| Transit (72 hours) | -40° C to +65° C |
| Humidity (noncondensing) | |
| Storage (6 months) | 20% to $95%$ relative humidity |

continued

| Table A-3 | The Apple Color OneScanner specifications (continued) |
|-----------|---|
| | |

| Specifications <i>Power requirements</i> | |
|--|---|
| AC input (U.S. & Canada model) | 120 V AC ±10%, 58 to 62 Hz |
| AC input (Universal model) | $100/120/200/220/240$ V AC $\pm 10\%$, 48 to 62 Hz |
| Power consumption | |
| Standby | <22 watts |
| Scanning | <45 watts |

Optimizing the Color OneScanner

The Color OneScanner enables you to copy color images and transfer them into a Macintosh, or other computer. The goal is to have as close a match as possible between the color characteristics of the input image and the color characteristics of the output image, as displayed on the computer screen or as, perhaps, eventually printed out.

The quality of the output image is a function of the scanner's color matrix and the gamma correction matrix. This appendix describes additional programming extensions associated with these factors, which enable you to optimize the data contained in the scanned color image.

Optimizing the Scanner Matrix

Most color input scanners use three input channels to collect scanned data. These are the red (R), green (G), and blue (B) channels. The document being scanned (or copied) is typically illuminated with an approximately white light source. To produce the R, G, and B channels, filters are placed over the sensors that detect the reflected light through the scanner's optical system.

These separation filters are generally designed around a number of constraining parameters, such as signal-to-noise ratio, cost, and scanner speed. The spectral width of the filter is one of the factors that determines the quality of the color image.

If the RGB separation filters are too narrow, the document is sampled with too low a spectral width. This reduces the light level that reaches the detectors and may either impair the scanner's signal-to-noise ratio, or require that the scanning speed be slowed down, or both. If the filters are too broad, the R, G, and B signals overlap, seriously damaging the quality of the color image.

Typically, the spectral width of the filters is such that some portion of the spectral range covered overlaps the spectral range of the adjacent filter. For example, the blue-green side of the blue filter has some spectral overlap with the blue-green side of the green filter, and the green-red side of the red filter overlaps with the green-red side of the green filter. The red filter has no overlap with any spectral area of the blue filter, or vice versa.

This type of overlap causes certain spectral areas of a document, such as the blue-green and the green-red, to give rise to signals in two channels at the same time. If the spectral widths of the filters were sufficiently large, they would reach a point where the signals would completely overlap. The detrimental effect of overlapping, therefore, is limited by the narrowness of the spectral widths of the filters. APPENDIX B

Optimizing the Color OneScanner

The overall effect of color overlapping represented by this matrix is shown in Table B-1.

| Table B-1 | Color overlap matrix | | | |
|-----------|----------------------|------------|--|--|
| RED/red | RED/green | RED/blue | | |
| GREEN/red | GREEN/green | GREEN/blue | | |
| BLUE/red | BLUE/green | BLUE/blue | | |
| | | | | |

Names shown in upper-case letters (RED) indicate the filter color, and the names shown in lower case letters (green) indicate the other light color that comes through the filter. For example, RED/green indicates how much green light comes through the red filter, where RED is the filter and green is the spectral area considered. The matrix shown in Table B-1 indicates what happens to the signals when scanning occurs. This matrix can be inverted and scaled, resulting in negative off-diagonal terms that allow the filter effects to be corrected.

If you run the Color OneScanner with the matrix shown in Table B-2, you will obtain compensation for the filter effects and the scanner will produce much brighter colors. This is because compensation of the common filter spectral areas is properly utilized in the signals delivered into the red, green, and blue data.

| Table B-2 | Compensating for filter effects | | | | |
|-----------|---------------------------------|---------|--|--|--|
| 1.1090 | -0.1109 | 0.0019 | | | |
| -0.1428 | 1.1600 | -0.0172 | | | |
| 0.0296 | -0.2075 | 1.1781 | | | |

Gamma Correction

You must also consider the following factors when programming the Color OneScanner:

- If you scan a set of gray patches into the Color OneScanner, the channels do not respond ideally to the different shades of gray.
- The signals generated during the scan should track the reflectance characteristics of the samples scanned.
- The display screen on which the scanned image is viewed does not produce a luminance scale that tracks the reflectance scale of the scanned patches.

Optimizing the Color OneScanner

Scanner gamma correction values are intended to produce an optimized result when these factors are considered. Here is the gamma correction equation:

 $Y = aX^g \tag{1}$

where

X is the input (representing the object scanned),

Y is the output (representing the image on the computer screen),

a is a constant, and

g is the gamma value.

The parameter *a* can be calculated from the following equation:

 $a = 255 / (255^g)$ (2)

The input value from the scanner electronics is between 0 and 255. When this value is substituted in equation (1) it yields the output value. If g = 1, then a = 1, and Y tracks X, with a 1:1 correspondence. You are typically looking for a one-to-one match between the object scanned (input), and the image (output). If g = 0.7, then a = 5.272, and Y tracks X via equation (1), using the values derived from equation (2).

Another form of the equation for gamma can be shown by the following:

 $Y = 255(x/255)^g$ (3)

You may set the gamma values, using the gamma matrix table. Table B-3 shows the gamma values used for a Rasterops 19-inch monitor, and for an Apple 13-inch RGB monitor.

| Monitor | Card | Red gamma | Green gamma | Blue gamma |
|---------------|--------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| Apple 13" RGB | 8-24GC | 0.609 | 0.578 | 0.641 |
| Rasterops 19" | 24XLTV | 0.732 | 0.700 | 0.763 |

The Apple monitor was set to a gamma value of 2.2, and the Rasterops monitor to a gamma value of 1.8. You may prefer different values, but, in general, the ones indicated should work as described.

Different values for the different colors are appropriate, as shown in Table B-3. However, you should notice that the ratios of red to green, and green to blue are approximately the same for each monitor. If you change the gamma value, you should keep the ratios between the colors the same to control the proper balance of color from the scanner.

Glossary

American National Standards Institute (ANSI) A committee that sets protocol and measurement standards.

application program The program executing in the host computer. This program takes input from the user in the form of mouse movements, button clicks, and keyboard text and performs tasks in response to this input.

automatic background adjustment A feature of the Apple Scanner that allows more detail to be brought out from the dark areas of the original document by automatically adjusting the brightness level as the scanner scans dark areas of the document.

Bi-level Color mode A composition mode that produces 8-color bitmaps. Although the scanner scans in color, each color component (red, green, and blue) has only two possible values: on and off.

bitmap A set of bits that represents the graphic image of an original document in memory.

brightness parameter The parameter that determines the overall whiteness of the image during a halftone or grayscale scan. Increasing brightness results in a lighter overall image. Decreasing brightness results in a darker overall image.

buffer A "holding area" of the computer's memory where information can be stored by one program or device and then read at a different rate by another—for example, a print buffer.

carriage The light-sensitive scanning mechanism, including the lamp, that moves along the scanner bed during a scan.

CCD Charge-coupled device made up of an array of coupled capacitors. It is commonly used in imaging applications.

color correction Changes the color data obtained from one source for output to a destination device. One objective of color correction might be to correct the data so that, when it is displayed, it matches an original photograph. A hardware mechanism called the 3-by-3 matrix multiplier implements the color correction process for the Color OneScanner.

composition parameter The parameter that instructs the scanner whether to process a scan area as line art, halftone, or grayscale. See also *Line Art mode, Halftone mode, Grayscale mode, Bi-Level Color mode,* and *Full Color mode.*

contrast parameter The parameter that condenses or expands the range between black and white for Halftone mode or Grayscale mode. A high contrast records different shades of gray, emphasizing blacks and whites. A low contrast records different shades of gray, emphasizing middle gray shades at the expense of blacks and whites.

data Any representation, such as characters or analog quantities, to which meaning is assigned. In the Apple scanners, image data consists of black and white (or gray) dots, representing dots on the original document.

dot See pixel.

driver See scanner driver.

fluorescent lamp See lamp.

Full Color mode A composition mode that generates the largest range of colors. The scanner outputs color pixel data for each line, in three planes: red, green, and blue. Each of the three color components has 256 possible values (8 bits of each color), for a total of 16.8 million colors. Three colors with 8 bits each produces 24-bit color depth.

gamma correction A correction technique that compensates for loss of detail in dark objects.

graymap parameter The parameter that determines the relationship between the 16 or 256 levels of gray that the scanner detects and the actual range of gray shades between black and white in the original. You can set the graymap parameter to bring out more light detail, more dark detail, or to show only normal detail.

Grayscale mode A composition mode that instructs an application program to record all shades of gray detected by the scanner. The resulting grayscale image can then be displayed on a grayscale monitor or converted to halftone or line art by the program.

Halftone mode A composition mode that uses combinations of black and white dots to represent shades of gray. In the halftone process used in printing, the number, pattern, size, and shape of the dots can be varied. In electronic processing, only the number and pattern of the dots can be varied. The human eye perceives a close approximation between a good halftone representation and the original shades of gray. Use Halftone mode to scan photographs, drawings, and other originals so that the image shows shades of gray. See also halftone pattern.

halftone pattern The matrix of threshold values that determine the patterns of black and white dots that represent different shades of gray in a Halftone mode scan area. You can change this pattern using any combination of 16 threshold values.

host computer Any microcomputer equipped with a SCSI port and capable of sending commands and parameters to and retrieving image data from the scanner.

image The result, residing in memory, of scanning an original. Also known as the *scan image*.

information transfer phases See *transfer phases*.

lamp The special fluorescent light used by the scanner to illuminate the original during a scan. The light reflected from the original is detected by the scanner and recorded as electronic information.

Line Art mode A composition mode that instructs the scanner to record each dot on the original as either a black or white dot. Use Line Art mode to scan text and line drawings that contain no gray shades. If you scan an original that contains gray shades, the brightness parameter determines the level at which a gray shade is recorded as black or white.

optical character recognition A process by which text on paper can be scanned and converted into text files on a computer.

original What you place on the scanner glass. The original can be a document, a photograph, or an object, such as a coin, that you want to scan.

parameter A variable that is assigned a value and then provided in the parameter list of a function or command when calling or invoking the function or command.

pixel Short for *picture element*. The size of a pixel is determined by the scan resolution. At a resolution of 300 dots per inch, 300 pixels are detected in each vertical inch and each horizontal inch. The term is used interchangeably with *dot*.

representative area A small portion of the image that you can use to test changes to any settings. You can display the new results on the screen or print them.

resolution A measure of the ability to delineate visual detail, which is usually specified in dots per inch (dpi). The higher the value, the finer the detail of the image.

resolution parameter A parameter that determines how finely the scanner scans the original, expressed in dots per inch. The resolution parameter determines the number of dots detected horizontally and vertically.

scan area parameter The parameter that specifies an area within the 8.5-by-14-inch scanner glass indicating the size and location of the area to scan. With the Apple Scanner, you can define one or more scan areas for each scan. The scan area is also known as the *window*.

scanner Any graphic input device that converts printed matter into bit (binary digital) data.

scanner driver Software that recognizes a predefined set of functions and, in turn, instructs the Apple scanners to perform the individual tasks that result in a scanned image.

scanner glass The glass surface that makes up the top surface of the scanner. This glass surface is where the user places the original document to be scanned.

scanning The process of digitizing an image for use with a computer.

sense data Sense data is status information transferred from the scanner to the host. It consists of a number of *Sense keys*.

Sense key A Sense key is a subset of *sense data*. Each key indicates a different status or error condition. For example, Sense key \$4 indicates a hardware error, Sense key \$2 indicates that the scanner is not ready for operation.

Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) A standard interface developed to permit extremely high-speed data transfer among peripheral devices and a personal computer.

threshold parameter The parameter that affects the operation of Automatic Background Adjustment in the Apple Scanner.

transactions The host and scanner communicate with defined commands, transmitted in packets. These message exchanges are called transactions.

transfer phases Refers to phases (command, data, status, and message) during which data or control information is transferred between devices on the SCSI bus.

window See scan area parameter.

Index

Numerals

3-by-3 matrix multiplier 9

A

ABA. See automatic background adjustment aborting scan 33 ABORT message 109 absolute position moving carriage to 64, 185 setting 59, 150 accessing scanner 16 Acknowledge signal (SCSI) 105 ACK signal 105 advanced capabilities, determining 27-29, 46 advanced constants 92-93 advanced data structures 83-90 advanced data types 95 advanced functions 14, 45-65 determining those supported 86 listed 96 ScGetAdvFeatures 46 ScGetButton 47 ScInvertPixels 48 ScLoadGamma 49 ScLoadMatrix 50 ScResetButton 51 ScSensorSelect 52 scSensorSelect 52 ScSetGraymap 53 ScSetGroup3 54 ScSetHTPattern 55 ScSetLamp 56 ScSetLed 57 ScSetNoCal 58 ScSetNoHome 59 ScSetScannerAtoD 60 ScSetSpeed 61 ScSetThreshold 62 ScSetWaitButton 63 ScVendorUnique 64 advanced scanner features, using 27

Apple Programmers and **Developers** Association (APDA) xvi Apple Scanner 12, 14 automatic background adjustment 10 bits per pixel values 159 brightness values 158 contrast values 158 data compression 159, 163, 166 features 12 grayscale support 5 halftone patterns supported 159 multiple scan area support 8 resolutions supported 156 SCSI hardware interface 104-107 SCSI messages 108 SCSI sense data 115 specifications 193 Apple-specific MODE SELECT parameter page Apple Scanner 134 Color OneScanner 137 **OneScanner** 135 Apple-specific MODE SENSE data page Apple Scanner 144 Color OneScanner 147 **OneScanner** 145 applications, scanning 10-12 Arbitration, SCSI bus phase 106 assembly language, using scanner driver from scanner driver, using from assembly language 29 ATN signal 105 Attention signal (SCSI) 105 automatic background adjustment defined 10 determining if available 86 reading threshold 145 setting threshold 62, 134, 158

В

backward compatibility 14 badUnitErr result code 98 basic scanning parameters 4 beginning a scan 11 Bi-level Color mode 4 bitmaps 3 bits per pixel 159, 162, 166 specifying 73 valid values 77 blue gamma field 89 brightness 4, 158, 162, 165 getting valid values (example) 19-22 specifying 71 valid values 75, 76 brightnessMax field of ScCompRec record 62 brightness parameter 7 BSY signal 105 buffer full ratio 139 bus contention, resolving 140 BUS DEVICE REJECT message 109 Bus Free, SCSI bus phase 106 bus phases, SCSI 106-107 Busy signal (SCSI) 105 button, scanner reading 47, 136, 138, 146, 148 resetting 51, 136, 137, 146, 148 waiting for 63, 150 byteWidth parameter to ScDoScan function 36, 54

С

calibration, defeating 58, 151 calibration RAM reading 65, 170 writing 64, 176 canceling scan 33 capabilities, determining scanner 42 carriage assembly 2, 59, 150 moving to absolute position 64, 185 moving to home position 64, 184 moving to relative position 64, 185 parking 64, 184 positioning 59, 150 carriage assembly (continued) returning to home position after scan 59, 150 CCD (charge-coupled device) array 2 power to 136, 146 CCITT Group III 54 C/D signal 106 CHECK CONDITION status code 108 close, Device Manager routine 34 closing the scanner 16-19, 34 color correction 8 color correction matrix 182 Color mode and brightness 7 Color OneScanner 12, 14 features 12 optimization 199 color overlap matrix 200 color overlapping 199 Command, SCSI bus phase 106 COMMAND COMPLETE message 108, 109 command structures GET DATA STATUS (\$34) 186-190 INOUIRY (\$12) 122–132 MODE SELECT (\$15) 133-139 MODE SENSE (\$1A) 143-148 **OBJECT POSITION (\$31)** 184-185 READ (\$28) 170-175 RELEASE (\$17) 142 RESERVE (\$16) 140-141 SCAN (\$1B) 149-152 SEND (\$2A) 176-183 SEND DIAGNOSTIC (\$1D) 153 TEST UNIT READY (\$00) 113 compensating for human vision 8 composition defined 4 determining modes supported by scanner 19-23, 82 mode, attributes of a 75 setting 154 specifying 73 compression, image data 54, 159, 163, 166 configuration, reading scanner 143 configuring scanner 133 contiguous memory, reading image data into 36 contrast 4, 5, 158, 162, 165 getting valid values (example) 19-23

specifying 72 valid values 75, 77 contrast parameter 5 control, Device Manager routine ScGetButton function 47 ScInvertPixels function 48 ScLoadGamma function 49 ScLoadMatrix function 50 ScResetButton function 51 ScSensorSelect function 52 ScSetGraymap function 53 ScSetGroup3 function 54 ScSetHTPattern function 55 ScSetLamp function 56 ScSetLed function 57 ScSetNoCal function 58 ScSetNoHome function 59 ScSetScanArea function 44 ScSetScannerAtoD function 60 ScSetSpeed function 61 ScSetThreshold function 62 ScSetWaitButton function 63 ScVendorUnique function 64 Control/Data signal (SCSI) 106

D

dark detail, enhancing 53, 134, 144 Data, SCSI bus phase 106 data bits, packing of returned 73 data buffer 11 data compression 159, 163, 166 Data In, SCSI bus phase 106 data integrity 61, 136, 138, 146 Data Out, SCSI bus phase 106 data structures 68-90 advanced 83-90 ScMatrix 90 standard 68-83 data transfer speed, controlling 61, 136, 138, 146 DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command 134, 145, 152, 154 DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS command structure 154, 155 DEFINE WINDOW PARAMETERS parameter list 156, 159, 163 defining image buffer 11 determining scanner capabilities 14, 19-24 device driver. See scanner driver Device Manager 29 Device Manager function equivalents 100

diagnostics, running scanner 153 dimensions, supported halftone pattern 85 direction, scan 162 DISCONNECT message 109 disconnect-reconnect parameter page 133, 138 downloading halftone patterns 176 driver name 16, 29 driver. *See* scanner driver

Е

enhancing dark detail 8, 53, 134, 144 enhancing light detail 8, 53, 134, 144 error codes hardware 114 scanner driver 97 error reporting, SCSI behavior 107 examples 16–29 excess pixels, masking off 70 existing bitmaps, reading into 70

F

FAX encoding of image data 54 features determining scanner 42 features, querying scanner 122 file formats 11 filter effects, compensating for 200 fluorescent lamp 2, 58, 151 controlling 56, 135, 136, 138, 145, 146 Full Color mode 4, 5 function result codes, scanner driver 97

G

gamma correction 8, 53, 134, 144, 200 gamma data write format 181 gamma values setting for different monitors 201 GET DATA STATUS command 170, 186 GET DATA STATUS return structure Apple Scanner 187 Color OneScanner 189 OneScanner 189 GOOD status code 108 graphics file formats 11 graymap 8 setting 53, 134, 144 Grayscale mode 4, 5 and brightness 5, 7, 72 and contrast 5, 72 green gamma field 89

Η

halfToneElements field of ScCompRec record 40 halftone field of ScAreaRec record 40, 55, 78 halftone matrix pattern 180 Halftone mode 4, 40, 55 and brightness 4, 7, 72 and contrast 4,72 downloaded patterns 87 halftone parameter page description 179 halftone patterns 4, 159, 162 defining 87 determining those supported 40 determining valid patterns (example) 19-23 dimensions of downloaded patterns 86 dimensions supported 85 downloading 55, 85, 176 names of those supported 78 reading downloaded patterns 170 restrictions on downloaded patterns 85 specifying 73 hardware error codes 114 hardware reset, SCSI behavior 107 high-speed scanning 61, 136, 138, 146 home position, moving carriage to 64, 184 human vision and scanned images 8

I, J

IDENTIFY message 109 image buffer 11 image data, reading (example) 24-27 information transfer phases, SCSI bus 107 initializing scanners 11 initializing scanning parameters 11 Input/output signal (SCSI) 106 INOUIRY command 122, 170 INQUIRY command return structure Apple Scanner 123 Color OneScanner 129 **OneScanner** 126 intensity curve 49 interface compatibility 14 I/O signal 106

Κ

killIO, Device Manager routine 33

L

lamp, controlling 56, 135, 136, 138, 145, 146 LED, controlling 57, 136, 137, 146, 148 light detail, enhancing 53, 134, 144 Line Art mode 4, 62 and brightness 4, 7, 71

Μ

matrix multiplier 9 Message, SCSI bus phase 107 Message In, SCSI bus phase 107 Message Out, SCSI bus phase 107 MESSAGE REJECT message 109 messages, SCSI 108–109 Message signal (SCSI) 106 minimum read size 35, 77 minReadSize field of ScStdFeaturesRec record 35 modes Bi-level Color 4, 5 Full Color 5 Grayscale 5 Halftone 5 Line Art 4 MODE SELECT command 133 MODE SENSE command 143 MSG signal 106

Ν

noErr result code 98 noncontiguous memory, reading image data into 36

0

OBJECT POSITION command 184 OneScanner 12, 14 bits per pixel values 162, 166 brightness values 162, 165 contrast values 162, 165 features 12 grayscale support 5 halftone patterns supported 162 resolutions supported 161, 163 scan direction 162 SCSI hardware interface 104-107 SCSI messages 109 SCSI sense data 117, 119 specifications 194 open Device Manager routine 43 openErr result code 98 opening the scanner 16-19, 43 optical character recognition (OCR) 2 optimizing the Color OneScanner 199 orchestrating a scan 10-12

Ρ

packing of returned data bits 73 parameters, setting scanner 44 parking carriage assembly 64, 184 PICT file format 11 pin assignments, SCSI connector 104 pixel, bits to represent one 73 pixels and resolution 3 pixels per inch 7 PNTG file format 11 position, moving carriage to 64, 185 positioning carriage assembly 59, 150 power signal (SCSI) 105 power-up, SCSI behavior 107

Q

querying scanner capabilities (example) 19–23 quitting scan 33

R

read, Device Manager routine 35 READ command 170 **READ** command structure Apple Scanner 170 Color OneScanner 173 OneScanner 171 reading calibration RAM 170 reading downloaded halftone patterns 170 reading into existing bitmaps 70 reading scanner data 11, 35, 77, 170, 186 example 24-27 reading static RAM 170 read size, minimum 77 ready status, checking 113 rectangle, reading into 36 red gamma field 89 relative position, moving carriage to 64, 185 **RELEASE command** 142 releasing the scanner 16-19, 34, 142 REQ signal 106 REQUEST SENSE command 113, 114 **REOUEST SENSE return structure** Apple Scanner 115 Color OneScanner 119 OneScanner 117 Request signal (SCSI) 106 Reselection, SCSI bus phase 106 resElements field of ScCompRec record 41

RESERVATION CONFLICT status code 108 **RESERVE** command 140 reserving the scanner 16-19, 43, 140 Reset signal (SCSI) 105 resolution 3 1-dpi increment support 76 Apple Scanner values 156 determining supported 41 getting valid values (example) 19-23 OneScanner values 161, 163 setting 154 setting horizontal and vertical differently 86 specifying 69 valid values 79 resolution parameter 7 resolving bus contention 140 result codes badUnitErr 98 noErr 98 openErr 98 scBusy 99 scComErr 98 scDimLampErr 99 sceos 99 scLampErr 99 scNotFoundErr 98 scParamErr 98 scResetErr 98 scScannerErr 98 statusErr 98,99 result codes, scanner driver 97 retrieving scanned data 11 rowBytes parameter to ScDoScan function 37, 54 RST signal 105

S

sample code 16–29 opening the scanner driver 17 retrieving information 20 setting up scan parameters 23 starting the scan 25 using advanced features 28 valid resolution 22 ScAbortScan function 33, 35 ScAdvFeaturesRec record 46 defined 84 scan, starting (example) 24–27

scan area 8, 24 defining 80 dimensions 81 setting (example) 24 setting dimensions 154 specifying 69 scan areas, secondary 80, 84 SCAN command 149 SCAN command structure Apple Scanner 149 Color OneScanner 151 OneScanner 150 scan direction 162 scanned image, defining 8 scanner capabilities 19 scanner components 2 scanner data, reading 24-27 scanner driver advanced constants 92-93 advanced data types 95 advanced functions 14, 15, 45-65 listed 96 advanced functions supported 86 applications 14 assembly-language programs 29, 100 closing 34 data structures 68-?? determining advanced capabilities 46 error codes 97 introduction to 14 name 16, 29 opening 43 sample code 16-29 standard constants 92 standard data types 93-94 standard functions 14, 15, 32-??, 96 using 16-29 version 81, 84 scanner drivers 14 scanner features, guerving 122 scanner intensity curve 89 scanner matrix, optimizing 199 scanners and human vision 8 scanner-specific features, using 64 scanner-specific functions 14 scanner type identifiers 81 scanning application functions 10 scanning applications 10-12 scanning area 3,8 scanning parameters 4, 11 brightness 7

scanning parameters (continued) composition 4 contrast 5 gamma correction 8 resolution 7 scan area 8 threshold 10 scanning parameters, setting 44, 154 scanning process 2, 10-12 scan parameters, setting 23, 44 scan speed, controlling 61, 136, 138, 146 scan time, reducing by controlling lamp 56, 135, 136, 138, 145, 146 by defeating calibration 58, 151 by positioning carriage 150 with ScSetNoHome function 59 ScAreaRec record and ScScanAreaRec record 80 defined 69 scBusy result code 99 ScClose function 16-19, 34, 56 scComErr result code 98 ScCompRec record and ScStdFeaturesRec record 81 defined 75 scDimLampErr result code 99 ScDoScan function 24-27, 33, 35 scEOS result code 99 ScGetAdvFeatures function 27-29, 46, 84 ScGetButton function 47, 51, 86 ScGetHalfTones function 19, 23, 40,78 ScGetRes function 19-23, 41, 79 ScGetStdFeatures function 42. 44, 75, 81 example 19-23 ScHalfToneArray record 40 ScHalfToneArray structure defined 78 size of 76 ScInvertPixels function 48,86 scLampErr result code 99 ScLoadGamma function 49,86 ScLoadGamma record function 89 ScLoadMatrix function 50 ScMatrix 90 ScMatrixMul function 86 scNotFoundErr result code 98 ScOpen function 16-19, 43

color correction 8

scParamErr result code 98 ScPatRec record 55,87 ScResArray record 41,79 ScResArray structure, size of 76 ScResetButton function 47,51 scResetErr result code 98 ScScanAreaRec record 44,80 scScannerErr result code 98 ScSensorSelect function 52,86 ScSetAtoD function 86 ScSetAto function 86 ScSetGraymap function 53,86 ScSetGroup3 function 54,86 ScSetHTPattern function 55, 85, 87 ScSetLamp function 56,86 ScSetLed function 57,86 ScSetNoCal function 58,86 ScSetNoHome function 59,86 ScSetScanArea function 24, 35, 44, 69, 80 restrictions on parameters 86 ScSetScannerAtoD function 60 ScSetSpeed function 61,86 ScSetThreshold function 62,86 ScSetWaitButton function 63,86 SCSI bus phases 106-107 SCSI commands 112–190 **DEFINE WINDOW** PARAMETERS (\$24) 154 GET DATA STATUS (\$34) 186 INQUIRY (\$12) 122 listed 112 MODE SELECT (\$15) 133 MODE SENSE (\$1A) 143 **OBJECT POSITION (\$31) 184** READ (\$28) 170 RELEASE (\$17) 142 REQUEST SENSE (\$03) 114 **RESERVE (\$16)** 140 SCAN (\$1B) 149 SEND (\$2A) 176 SEND DIAGNOSTIC (\$1D) 153 status codes 108 TEST UNIT READY (\$00) 113 SCSI commands and operation codes 112 SCSI hardware interface 104-107 SCSI messages 108-109 SCSI signals 105–106 SCSI status codes 108 ScStdFeaturesRec record 42 defined 81 ScVendorUnique function 64

secondaryMax field of ScAdvFeaturesRec record 80 secondary scan areas 80, 84, 156, 166 and composition mode 86 Selection, SCSI bus phase 106 Select signal (SCSI) 106 self-test, running scanner 153 SEL signal 106 SEND command 176 SEND command structure Apple Scanner 176 Color OneScanner 178 OneScanner 177 SEND DIAGNOSTIC command 153 sense data, retrieving SCSI 114 Setting 23 setting calibration RAM 176 setting scan parameters 23 setting static RAM 176 signals, SCSI 105-106 specifications, of Apple scanners 193-195, ??-197 speed, controlling scan 61, 136, 138, 146 standard capabilities, determining 19-23 standard constants 92 standard data structures 68-83 standard data types 93 standard features of scanner, determining 42 standard functions 14, 32-44 listed 96 ScAbortScan 33 ScClose 34 ScDoScan 35 ScGetHalfTones 40 ScGetRes 41 ScGetStdFeatures 42 ScOpen 43 ScSetScanArea 44 starting a scan 11, 24-27, 35, 149 startup, SCSI behavior 107 static RAM reading 170 writing 176 status, Device Manager routine 40, 41, 42, 46 status, retrieving scanner 114 Status, SCSI bus phase 106 status codes, SCSI 108 statusErr result code 98,99 storing scanned data 11

summary of scanner driver 92-101

Т

Terminator power signal (SCSI) 105 TERMPWR signal 105 TEST UNIT READY command 113 threshold 62, 158, 162, 165 automatic adjustment 10 threshold parameter 10 transfer data types 174 transfer identification 174 type identifier, scanner 81

U

using the scanner driver 16-29

V

vendor-unique features, using 64 version, driver 81, 84 version field of ScAdvFeaturesRec record 46 version field of ScStdFeaturesRec record 42

W, X, Y, Z

window identifier byte 152 writing calibration RAM 176 writing scanner data 176 writing static RAM 176 This Apple manual was written, edited, and composed on a desktop publishing system using Apple Macintosh computers and FrameMaker software. Proof pages were created on an Apple LaserWriter IINTX printer. Final pages were created on the Varityper VT600 imagesetter. Line art was created using Adobe[™] Illustrator. PostScript[™], the page-description language for the LaserWriter, was developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Text type is Palatino[®] and display type is Helvetica[®]. Bullets are ITC Zapf Dingbats[®]. Some elements, such as program listings, are set in Apple Courier.

WRITER Joyce D. Mann

DEVELOPMENTAL EDITORS Antonio Padial, Beverly Zegarski

ILLUSTRATOR Deborah Dennis

PRODUCTION EDITOR Rex Wolf

Special thanks to Shirley Foreman, Steve Bischoff, Lin Chan, Forrest Tanaka, Alex Pollayil, and Rolly Reed

Acknowledgments to Doug Engfer, who wrote the first edition of this book.